

Е. М. БАЗАНОВА

# ПРАКТИКУМ ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Учебное пособие

МИНИСТЕРСТВО ОБРАЗОВАНИЯ И НАУКИ РОССИЙСКОЙ ФЕДЕРАЦИИ  
РОССИЙСКИЙ ГОСУДАРСТВЕННЫЙ СОЦИАЛЬНЫЙ УНИВЕРСИТЕТ

Е. М. Базанова

# ПРАКТИКУМ ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Учебное пособие

Екатеринбург  
Издательство Уральского университета  
2017

УДК 811.111'36(076)  
ББК Ш143.21-932.2  
Б171

В. В. Левченко, доктор педагогических наук, профессор,  
заведующий кафедрой иностранных языков и профессиональной  
коммуникации Самарского университета;

С. А. Сучкова, кандидат филологических наук, доцент,  
директор Центра академического письма НИУ ВШЭ

**Базанова, Е. М.**

Б171 Практикум по грамматике английского языка : учеб. пособие /  
Е. М. Базанова. – Екатеринбург : Изд-во Урал ун-та, 2017. – 234 с.

ISBN 978-5-7996-2234-3

Учебное пособие является продолжением учебного комплекса «Практикум по грамматике английского языка» и представляет собой справочник по грамматике английского языка и одновременно сборник упражнений. Основная цель пособия состоит в формировании навыка правильного употребления грамматических структур английского языка в различных видах речевой деятельности. Пособие состоит из 5 тематических разделов, каждый из которых содержит теоретическую и практическую части, что позволит изучать грамматические правила английского языка и сразу же закреплять их использование в контексте реального процесса коммуникации. По ходу работы над каждым разделом пособия предлагаются тесты, предусматривающие промежуточный и итоговый контроль усвоенного грамматического материала. В конце книги приводятся предложения для перевода с русского языка на английский и приложения.

Пособие предназначено для учащихся старших классов средней школы с углублённым изучением английского языка или студентов тех институтов и факультетов иностранных языков, в которых курс практической грамматики читается на английском языке. Пособие так же может быть использовано для самообразования, или в качестве грамматического дополнения к любому курсу английского языка соответствующего уровня.

УДК 811.111'36(076)  
ББК Ш143.21-932.2

ISBN 978-5-7996-2234-3

© Базанова Е. М., 2017

# UNIT 1: FUTURE PLANS

## ***Focus on***

- *Future Plans*
- *Travel*
- *Dreams and Reality*
  
- *Future Simple*
- *Future Continuous*
- *Future Continuous vs Future Simple*
- *Future Perfect Simple vs Future Perfect Continuous*
- *Ways of Expressing Future*
- *Clauses of Time and Condition*
- *both, either, neither / both ... and / either ... or / neither ... nor*
- *Further Practice: Articles*

## **Future simple**

### ***Usage:***

- a statement of a future fact

*The journey **will take** six hours.*

These expressions are usually used with Future Simple:

*tomorrow (morning/afternoon/evening) / the day after tomorrow / in (the near) future / soon / one of these days / in a few minutes / in a moment / in a week / in (five) months' time / in a week's time, etc.*

- to predict the future

*In the future, machines **will do** many of the jobs that people do now.*

When future is predicted, *will* is very often used with the following verbs and expressions:

<b>think</b>	<i>I think they'll win the competition this time.</i>
<b>expect</b>	<i>I expect they'll be here at 10 o'clock tomorrow morning.</i>
<b>believe</b>	<i>I believe I'll be rich and famous some day.</i>
<b>be sure</b>	<i>I'm sure you'll enjoy your holiday abroad very much.</i>
<b>be afraid</b>	<i>Helen can't keep a secret. I'm afraid she'll tell everybody.</i>
<b>hope</b>	<i>Mike hopes he'll have a well-paid job in 6 years' time.</i>

a) with adverbs of probability

**probably**     *It will probably rain later this evening.*

**perhaps**     *Perhaps, I'll see you tomorrow.*

- for a sudden decision made at the time of speaking

*Wait a minute — I'll open the door.*

- to show willingness to do or not to do something in the future

*I promise I'll give up smoking. I'll never speak to her again.*

### POSITIVE FORM

I	}	<b>will ('ll)</b> work tomorrow.
You		
He/She/It		
We		
You		
They		

#### NOTE:

a) **will** is used with all persons (I, you, he, they, etc.).

b) **shall** is used instead of **will** with I or **we**, but in everyday speech, **will** is more common.

c) in spoken English, 'll is used with subject pronouns. He'll be there in time.

**But:** *John will be there in time.*

**Exercise 1.** Put the verbs in brackets into Future Simple. Use contraction ('ll) where possible.

*Example: I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Liverpool next week. — I think I'll be in Liverpool next week. Fiona \_\_\_\_\_ (be) 20 in March. — Fiona will be 20 in March.*

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) home before midnight tonight.
2. Don't worry. I \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) for the damage to your car.
3. The company \_\_\_\_\_ (give) you an extra day's holiday.
4. "Would you like something to drink?"—"Oh, thank you. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) some apple juice."
5. Don't touch wire! You \_\_\_\_\_ (hurt) yourself.
6. I think the trip \_\_\_\_\_ (be) rather exciting.
7. "I'm too tired to walk home."—"Don't worry. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (give) you a lift."

8. Of course, we \_\_\_\_\_ (help) you.
9. "There's someone at the door."—"Is there? Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) who it is."
10. Alma \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) your office after 3 o'clock.
11. She \_\_\_\_\_ (lend) you some money if you have no objections.
12. I'm a bit cold. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (put) on a sweater.
13. Bill looks tired. I think he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed early tonight.
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ (make) the decision tomorrow.

### NEGATIVE FORM

You	}	<b>will not (won't)</b> work tomorrow.
He/She/It		
We		
You		
They		

#### NOTE:

- a) **will not (won't)** is used with all persons. (I, you, he, etc.)
- b) **shall not (shan't)** is used with I and **we**, but in everyday speech, **will not (won't)** is more common.

**Exercise 2.** Write negative sentences with the verb in brackets.

*Example: He won't forget (forget) to take his medicine.*

1. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (let) me go to the disco alone.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (accept) the invitation.
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) today.
4. I know she \_\_\_\_\_ (agree) with this idea.
5. I think the exam \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very difficult.
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a really good time in that nightclub.
7. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) this report tonight.
8. Peter's friend \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) here till 9 o'clock.
9. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (set) at 7.35 pm tomorrow.
10. Don't trust this company. You \_\_\_\_\_ (see) your money again.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) anywhere for a walk tonight.
12. It \_\_\_\_\_ (cost) me much to travel to my native town by train.
13. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (return) home before twelve.
14. She \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) all of her work before midnight.

**Exercise 3.** Complete the following sentences with *I think I'll ...* or *I don't think I'll ...*

*Example:* It's hot. You decide to open the window. — *I think, I'll open the window.* It's snowing heavily. You decide not to go out. — *I don't think I'll go out.*

1. You feel a bit hungry. You decide to have something to eat.
2. You don't know Ken's mobile telephone number. You decide to phone him at work.
3. Bill is very lazy. He isn't studying hard enough to get ready for his exams. You are sure he's going to fail them.
4. A friend of yours offers you a lift in his car, but you decide to walk.
5. It's cold and windy outside. You decide not to go jogging.
6. You are not keen on computer games, but a friend of yours offers to play a game. You don't want to.
7. You are very tired. You decide to go to bed early.
8. You are in a hurry to catch the 8.15 train to the suburbs of Moscow. You decide to take a taxi.
9. Your travel agency offers you a boat trip. You are afraid to be seasick. You decide not to go.
10. Your shoulder bag is too heavy. You decide to leave out some items.

**Exercise 4.** Write questions **do you think** \_\_\_\_\_ **will** \_\_\_\_\_. with one of the verbs provided below.

*cost, forgive, phone, like, be back, stay, finish, snow, pass, grow*

*Example:* The weather doesn't look good. *Do you think it will snow?*  
The meeting is still going on. *When do you think it will finish?*

1. "I'm going out now."—"OK. What time \_\_\_\_\_?"
2. Here is a new teddy bear for your little brother. Do \_\_\_\_\_?"
3. Look, Mum! Here is a letter from Uncle Willie. He's coming to see us!
4. "You look sad. What's the matter?" — "My friends are leaving the country. They're going to Germany to study, so I probably \_\_\_\_\_ them for a couple of years." — "Why not? You can go there for a holiday."
5. "I'm going to buy Alice an iPhone for her birthday." — "She's already got one." — "Has she? Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ her a iPad."

**Exercise 5.** Complete the sentences with your predictions. Use the verbs in brackets.

*Example:* The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (get) much warmer in the next few years.

The weather *will/won't get* much warmer in the next few years.

1. Clothes \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very different in the year 2030.
2. Private cars \_\_\_\_\_ (disappear) before the year 2100.
3. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a computer in the year 2040.
4. In the year 2050 people \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) the same things as they do now.
5. Russia \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the next football World Cup.
6. English \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the world language in the year 2025.
7. People \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to distant planets by 2100.
8. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a cure for cancer before the year 2045.
9. Astronauts \_\_\_\_\_ (land) on Mars in the next few years.
10. Parents \_\_\_\_\_ (choose) appearance and character for their babies.

**Exercise 6.** Ben is 18 years old now. What will he be like in 6 years from now? How will his life be different then? Complete what Ben says. Use **will/won't**.

*Example:* I expect/I graduate from university with honors.

—*I expect I'll graduate from university with honors.*

1. I believe I/have a master's degree in economics.
2. I hope I/have a rather good job in six years' time.
3. Perhaps I/have a challenging job.
4. I expect I/be a self-made person.
5. I probably/not/be very rich.
6. I/not/look the same as I do now.
7. I think I/be married.
8. I/probably/study abroad.
9. I hope I/travel anywhere I like.

Are these things true for you?

Write sentences about yourself. Use ***I'll... / I'll probably be... / I don't know where I'll be... / I expect... / I don't think I'll... etc.***

This evening \_\_\_\_\_

Tomorrow morning \_\_\_\_\_

At the weekend \_\_\_\_\_

Next month \_\_\_\_\_

This summer \_\_\_\_\_

A few years from now \_\_\_\_\_

In 2025 \_\_\_\_\_



## GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b>Shall</b>	<b>I</b>	help you?	- Yes, please. / No, thanks.
<b>Shall</b>	<b>we</b>	go to the theatre?	- OK, let's go. I'm afraid, I cannot.
<b>Will</b>	<b>she/he/it</b>	stay here?	- Yes, she/he/it <b>will</b> . / No, she/he/it <b>won't</b> .

### NOTE:

a) **Shall** is generally used as a first person question (with /or **we**) to make suggestions and offers.

b) **Will** is used as a first person question with /to ask about future *Will I be happy, will I be rich...?*

**Exercise 7.** Make these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*Example:* (You be) at home tomorrow?

—Will you be at home tomorrow —Yes, I will. / No, I won't.

1. (You see) your parents this weekend?
2. (They go) to Scotland in June?
3. (Kate and you go) to the cinema next week?
4. (She come and see) her mother soon?
5. (Sam be) at the party too?
6. (Her son be) at school on Friday?
7. (Sally come) to the station to see them off?
8. (It be) Wednesday tomorrow?
9. (A friend of hers arrive) before 10 am.
10. (She leave) us some food in the fridge?
11. (You try) to find me those books?
12. (You open) your bank account in this bank?
13. (He tell) us the truth about the accident?
14. (Peter's brother be) at home for the next hour or so?

**Exercise 8.** Read a situation and then make up a sentence with **Shall I?**

*Example:* You see an old lady at the bus station. She is carrying a heavy bag but you can see it is too heavy for her. What do you say? – *Shall I carry the bag for you?*

1. You are going to your classroom and so is your teacher, but she has a lot of books in her hands. What do you say?
2. Your friend cannot do a problem. You already know the answer. What do you say?

3. The train is going to leave in a few minutes. Frank is going to get himself a magazine. He sees his girlfriend has nothing to read. What does he say?
4. Two men are trying to push a car. They are finding it very difficult. What do you say?
5. The teacher is trying to talk, but a lot of noise is coming from the street, as the window is open. You are next to the window. What do you say?
6. You are at home with your grandmother. It's rather late. She is dozing, and the television is on. What do you say?
7. You and your friend are going out of the house. The computer in your friend's room is working. He is outside; you're not. What do you say?
8. You and a friend of yours are in a men's fashion shop. You want to buy a pair of trousers. Now you are trying them on, but you are not sure whether to buy them or not. What do you say?

**Exercise 9.** Read a situation and then use *Shall we?* to make a suggestion.

*Example:* It's Saturday evening and Charles and Pamela want to go out somewhere.

Neither of them knows where, but then Charles has an idea.

*He says:* Shall we go to a concert?

1. You and your friend are hungry. There is a McDonald's nearby. You think it is not a bad restaurant. What do you say?
2. You and your friend have to get somewhere in Moscow. You know it is quickest by metro. What do you say?
3. David and his girlfriend want to go out. He knows there is a good film on at the cinema. What does he say?
4. Your mother wants to discuss something very important with you. But you feel run down after a long day. What do you say?
5. You and your sister can't decide what presents to give your parents for the coming holiday. Then suddenly your sister has an idea.
6. It's late at night. Two men are still in the office. They are arguing about one particular issue. Then the one who is tired of the argument says:
7. Julia and her friend are getting ready for an exam. It's quite stuffy in the room, and Julie has a terrible headache. She wants to go out for a walk in the park. What does she say?
8. Your grandfather is feeling bad today. None of the medicine he usually takes helps. He is getting worse. Your mother says:
9. Stella and her friend are giving a party tonight. They want to cook something special. Stella has got a Greek cookery book. She says:

**Exercise 10.** Make up your own sentences with *Shall I? / Shall we?*

*Example: the theatre this evening?* — Shall we go to the theatre this evening?  
*do the washing-up for you?* — Shall I do the washing-up for you

1. eat out somewhere?
2. buy something for you in the supermarket?
3. call the doctor?
4. a game of tennis?
5. close the window?
6. carry that bag for you?
7. turn on the light?
8. explain this rule again?
9. help you with your essay?
10. cook the dinner for you tonight?

**Exercise 11.** Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

*Example: cold/will/it/in the evening/be?* — *Will it be cold in the evening?*  
*will/to/be/see/again/nice/it/you.* — *It will be nice to see you again.*

1. they/win/the/will/match?
2. won't/test/driving/pass/he/his.
3. go/you/to/this/Greece/year/will?
4. tonight/be/Nick/party/the/won't/at.
5. you/for/window/open/I/the/shall?
6. jacket/will/on/think/I/put/a /I.
7. good/probably/won't/any/do/it.
8. next/be/will/thirty/Steve/birthday?
9. you/letters/will/post/for/he/those.
10. out/shall/tonight/we/somewhere/go?

**ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS**

<b>Shall</b>	<i>I</i>	<i>do</i>	my homework <b>or</b> help you about the house? — <i>Do your homework first.</i>
<b>Shall</b>	<i>we</i> <i>she/he/it</i>	<i>stay</i>	at home <b>or</b> go to the movies? — <i>Let's go to the movies.</i>
<b>Will</b>	<i>you</i> <i>they</i>	<i>wait</i>	till tomorrow <b>or</b> the day after tomorrow? — <i>Tomorrow.</i>

**Exercise 12.** Ask alternative questions and give short answers.

*Example: It (take) us an hour to get there by bus/on foot?*

— *Will it take us an hour to get there by bus or on foot?* — *(It'll take us an hour) on foot.*

I (ring) you tonight/tomorrow? — *Shall I ring you tonight or tomorrow?* — *(Ring me) tonight.*

1. You (be) in London for three months/for a couple of weeks?
2. Paula (see) you at Fred's house/at her parents'?
3. Your sister (be) 20 in March/in April?
4. John (call) round tomorrow/the day after tomorrow?
5. The weather tomorrow (be) warm and sunny/cold and rainy?
6. I (help) with the washing-up/cleaning the kitchen?
7. We (go) to the zoo/to the park?
8. You (get) your bachelor's degree in four years' time/later?
9. I (wear) something casual/formal to the party?
10. His boss (go) on a trip by train/by plane?
11. We (borrow) some money from our parents/from the bank?
12. You (see) your friends tonight/next week?
13. You and your elder brother (have) a holiday at the seaside/in the mountains?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>What</b>	shall	I	do	?	— <i>Whatever you like.</i>
<b>Where</b>	will	I	be	in ten years' time?	— <i>Nobody knows.</i>
<b>Where</b>	shall	we	go	tonight?	— <i>Let's go to the cinema.</i>
<b>When</b>	will	you	tell	her the truth?	— <i>One of these days.</i>
<b>How old</b>	will	he	be	next year?	— <i>21.</i>
<b>How often</b>	will	you	see	each other next semester?	— <i>Once or twice a month.</i>
<b>How long</b>	will	it	take	?	— <i>About an hour.</i>
<b>How much</b>	will	it	cost	you?	— <i>It won't be too expensive.</i>
<b>Why</b>	will	she	stay	in town this summer?	— <i>I'm afraid, I do not know.</i>
<b>Who</b>	will	---	win	the race?	— <i>At the moment, it's hard to say.</i>

### Exercise 13. Complete the sentences.

*Example: Who will arrange everything?* — I will.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ show me the way? — One of the guests.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Kate \_\_\_\_\_ next year? — She'll be 19.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend? — I think we'll spend it in the country.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ at the station? — They'll meet us at about 3 o'clock.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ new country cottage \_\_\_\_\_? — It won't be cheap, I'm afraid.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast? — I'll have a cup of coffee and some toast.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ to bed? — Early tonight.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ this summer? — I'll go to the seaside.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ the World Cup? — Perhaps, Brazil.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ dinner? — Let's eat out in a new French cafe.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ buy? — I'll buy *The Times*.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ tennis next month? — (They'll play) once or twice a week.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ to get to your native town by train? — It won't take long.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ for you? — Cook something delicious.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ help you with your homework? — A friend of mine will.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home tonight? — Because he's expecting a call  
from his British friend

**Exercise 14.** Nick wants to see Sandra. He is talking to her on the telephone. Complete the conversation with **will/shall/won't**.

- Nick: \_\_\_\_\_ (you/be) at home this evening, Sandra?
- Sandra: Well, I'm working late. I don't expect \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) until after 9 pm, so  
I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) home until quite late.
- Nick: Oh, I see. What about tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_ (you/be) free for lunch?
- Sandra: No, I'm afraid. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in a meeting at lunchtime.
- Nick: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (the meeting/end)?
- Sandra: I'm not sure, but it probably \_\_\_\_\_ (not/finish) before 2 pm.  
Listen, \_\_\_\_\_ (we/meet) for a coffee after work tomorrow evening?
- Nick: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (you/finish) tomorrow?
- Sandra: \_\_\_\_\_ (be) free by 6 pm.
- Nick: All right. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) you at your office at 6 pm then.
- Sandra: Right. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) you then.

**Exercise 15.** What questions would you ask a fortune-teller?

Begin with **Will / When / How long / Where** \_\_\_\_\_. Ask at least 10 questions.

*Example:* Will I work for an international company?

Who much will I earn?

Will my job be interesting?

## TAG QUESTIONS

I'll give you a lift, **shall I?** – Yes, please. That's very kind of you. / No, thanks. I'll walk.

I		be successful,	
You		go by train,	
They	<b>('ll) will</b>	be careful next time,	<b>won't...? – Yes, /(No,...)will (won't).</b>
Everything		be OK,	
The train		leave at 7.30 pm,	

I		work next week,	
You		be late,	
He	<b>won't</b>	tell anyone,	<b>will...? – Yes, /(No,...)will (won't).</b>
They		stop help us,	
It		rain tonight,	

### NOTE:

a) After **Let's....** the question tag is **shall we?** Let's go out for a walk, shall we?

b) After the imperative (Do/Don't do...) the tag is **will you?** Open the door, will you?

c) To make an offer, shall I is used in the tag: I will give you a lift, shall I?

### Exercise 16. Give the correct tag to these sentences.

- He will enjoy his stay in Moscow, \_\_\_\_\_?
- I will be an independent person, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Tomorrow will be cold, with some snow in the afternoon, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Sally won't tell you what to do. Don't ask her for advice, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They will need a lot of money for that trip, \_\_\_\_\_?
- All Mike's friends will be at his wedding, \_\_\_\_\_?
- I'm certain he will agree, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Let's have dinner, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Everything will be justified, \_\_\_\_\_?

### Exercise 17. Ask questions about the information in italics.

- At the weekend *we'll probably go to the cinema.*
- Tomorrow evening I expect I'll eat out *with my friends.*
- At the end of this course, I'll probably speak English *rather well.*
- I'll have *two* lectures tomorrow.

5. I'll never finish that book: *it's too boring.*
6. You will find the newspaper *on the table.*
7. *Yes*, I will enjoy Mr Smith's next English lesson.
8. Moscow will be *900 years old* in 2047.
9. *OK*, *let's have a holiday in Egypt.*
10. *It will be* rainy and quite cold.
11. They'll meet *Joyce* at the airport at 7 o'clock.
12. *No*, I won't work from Wednesday till Friday.
13. It'll take you *an hour and a half* to get to the airport.
14. *Dave* will be a Master of Science in three years' time.

### ‘THERE IS/ARE’ in Future Simple

- + **There will** always **be** future for music.
- **There won't be** any newspapers tomorrow.

#### Questions:

General:	<b><i>Will there be</i></b> any talk shows today?	— <i>Yes, there will.</i>
Alternative:	<b><i>Will there be</i></b> national or international students in your group?	— <i>International.</i>
Special:	<b><i>What will there be</i></b> on TV?	— <i>I don't know.</i>
	<b><i>When will there be</i></b> a party?	— <i>At 7 pm.</i>
	<b><i>Why will there be</i></b> no opportunity for shopping?	— <i>All the shops will be closed at that time.</i>
	<b><i>How many people will there be</i></b> at the party?	— <i>A lot.</i>
	<b><i>How much snow will there be</i></b> in the mountains at this time of the year?	— <i>Not much.</i>
	<b><i>What kind of books will there be</i></b> in that library?	— <i>Only scholarly publications.</i>
Tag:	<b><i>There won't be</i></b> any wars in future, <b><i>will there?</i></b>	— <i>No, there won't.</i>
	<b><i>There will be</i></b> lots of games at the party, <b><i>won't there?</i></b>	— <i>Yes, there will.</i>

**Exercise 18.** Rewrite each sentence as **positive**, **negative**, or a **general question**, according to the instructions.

*Example:* There will be no tickets left. (Question) — *Will there be any tickets left?*

There will be a world war before the year 2030. (Negative) — *There won't be a world war before the year 2030.*

There won't be any other extras to pay for. (Positive) —*There will be some extras to pay for.*

1. There will be presents for all the children who are coming to the party. (Question)
2. There will be a meeting tomorrow. (Negative)
3. There won't be a world government before the year 2050. (Positive)
4. There will be plenty of room for everyone at the reception. (Question)
5. There will be hundreds of people on the beach. (Negative)
6. There won't be much sun at this time of the year. (Positive)
7. There will be no entertainment programmes today. (Question)
8. There will be some letters in the mailbox for you. (Negative)
9. There won't be any exams in June. (Positive)
10. There will be less traffic jams in Moscow in the near future. (Question)
11. There won't be a world currency in the future. (Positive)
12. There will be more epidemics in the 3rd millennium. (Negative)

**Exercise 19.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

1. According to the weather forecast, there will be a strong wind *at night*.
2. There will be special programmes today *because of the event*.
3. There will be *a lot of* places of entertainment in my hometown before the year 2025.
4. They say there will be *little* snow this winter.
5. There will be no violence and cruelty in future, *because people will be kind and wise*.
6. There will be lots of *games, songs and dances* at Don's birthday party. I hope you will enjoy yourselves.
7. There will be no trains to the suburbs *after midnight*.
8. There will be *quite a few* venues for a three-day arts festival in the city.
9. There will be another Olympic *Youth Games* in the year 2020.

## Future continuous

**Usage:**

- to talk about an action which will be **in progress** at some time in the future  
*Don't phone me at 8.00 pm. I'll be **having** a meeting then.*
- to talk about an activity or state which covers the whole of a future time period  
*I'll be **working** all evening.*



- to talk about things in the future which are already planned, or which are part of a regular routine

***I'll be driving*** into town later on. Do you want a lift?

— Shall I give Jim a message for you? — Oh, I don't want to trouble you.

—It's no trouble, really. ***I'll be seeing*** Jim tomorrow, anyway.

Verbs normally not used in the Continuous tense

**a. verbs of thinking**

think (= believe)	believe	suppose	remember
see (= understand)	recognize	mean	realize
imagine	forget	know	understand

***I won't forget*** my stay in the USA.

**b. verbs of feeling**

like dislike hate love prefer want wish

Jane is a very nice girl. I think you'll **like** her very much.

**c. sense verbs**

see look smell taste feel

***Don't put on this dress. You'll look*** weird in it.

**d. other verbs**

have (= possess)	own belong (to)	owe	hear	be	need
include	cost contain	weigh	sound	seem	

***She'll need*** a lot of knowledge to do the job.

## POSITIVE FORM

***will be + Present Participle (Verb + -ing)***

I	}	<b><i>will (ll) be working</i></b> tomorrow.
You		
He/She/It		
We		
You		
They		

Spelling of ending **-ing**. See Appendix p. 227

NOTE:

a) **will** is used with all persons (*I, You, He, They, etc.*).

b) **shall** is used instead of **will** with *I* or **we**, but in everyday speech, **will** is more common.

c) in spoken English 'll is used with subject pronouns.

**I'll** be seeing Helen next week. Paul **will** be waiting for you outside.

**Exercise 20.** Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Continuous Tense. Use contractions ('ll) where possible.

*Example:* I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner at 7.00 pm. — I'll be having dinner at 7.00 pm.

Carol \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in my friends' flat. — Carol will be staying in my friends' flat.

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in time for lunch.
2. Mrs Brown \_\_\_\_\_ (appear) at the Royal Festival Hall.
3. We \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) in Newcastle for about a couple of weeks.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) all over the country with Adrian, one of my closest friends.
5. At 2.00 pm tomorrow she \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the office.
6. At this time tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in class.
7. Don't be impatient. He \_\_\_\_\_ (come) soon.
8. At this time tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) in the Hyde Park in London.
9. My father \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) football at 6 o'clock.
10. Tom and Frank \_\_\_\_\_ (see) their new client tomorrow to talk about the contract.
11. Glenn \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in London for the next few weeks.
12. Peter and Sam \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a good time on their holiday in Turkey.

### NEGATIVE FORM

**will not (won't) be + Present Participle (Verb + -ing)**

I  
You  
He/She/It  
We  
They

}

**will not (won't) be doing** anything special at this time tomorrow.

NOTE:

- a) **will not (won't)** is used with all persons (*I, You, We, They, etc.*).  
b) **shall not (shan't)** is used instead of **will not (won't)** with **I and we**, but in everyday speech, **will not (won't)** is more common.

**Exercise 21.** Complete the sentences with the negative form of the verbs in brackets.

*Example: Next year they \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Spain.*

Next year they won't be living in Spain.

1. The children \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) with their grandparents during summer holidays.
2. At four o'clock on Tuesday afternoon, we \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to Paris.
3. Tomorrow I \_\_\_\_\_ (study) all evening.
4. My friends \_\_\_\_\_ (take) an exam at this time tomorrow.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) the tennis tournament tonight.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_ (staying) in Brussels over the weekend.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) at home tomorrow—don't call me at that time.
8. Chris \_\_\_\_\_ (play) golf at 4 o'clock tomorrow afternoon.
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the same job in five years' time.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) any exams in April.
11. She \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for you at the station.
12. Poor Steve! This time next week he \_\_\_\_\_ (set) out on a journey with us.

**Exercise 22.** What will/won't be happening at this time tomorrow? Write true sentences, either positive or negative.

*Example: I/work in the office. — I won't be working in the office.*

*I/talk with my academic advisor. — I'll be talking with my academic advisor.*

1. I/attend classes.
2. My parents /fly over the Atlantic.
3. It/snow all day long.
4. I/see my old schoolmates.
5. We/ski in the mountains.
6. A friend of mine/leave for another country for a holiday.
7. My roommate/have a housewarming party.
8. Russian astronauts/land on the Moon.

9. My English teacher/explain some grammar rules to her students.
10. I/lie on a beautiful beach.
11. I/play computer games.
12. My friend and I/have lunch.

### GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b>Will</b>	I	<b>be moving</b> out on Monday? — <b>Yes, / (No), I/ he/she/ it.. will (won't)</b>
	you	
	he/she/it	
	we	
	you	
	they	

**Exercise 23.** Change these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*Example: I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her one of these days. — Will you be seeing her one of these days? — Yes, I will. /No, I won't.*

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ (give) another party at the same time next week.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Tim on Saturday.
3. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (use) his car this evening.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a raincoat and a hat.
5. At 9.30 pm we \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a new film.
6. At 10 o'clock tomorrow morning, I \_\_\_\_\_ (tidy) up my flat.
7. John \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for you outside.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ (get) ready for his exams.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner at this time tomorrow.
10. My boss \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis after work.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at my grandma's at the weekend.
12. They \_\_\_\_\_ (hitch-hike) in two days' time.

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

<b>Will</b>	I	<b>be coming</b> home or staying there? — <b>I / he / it, etc. will be coming</b> home.
	you	
	she/he/it	
	we	
	you	
	they	

**Exercise 24.** Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.

*Example: he/study/watch TV at 9 o'clock tomorrow?*

– *Will he be studying or watching TV at 9 o'clock tomorrow? — He'll be studying.*

1. you/pack things/have a rest before the trip?
2. they/rent a flat/live in a hotel during their stay in the UK?
3. your friend/spend next weekend in town/in the country?
4. he/take TOEFL / IELTS exam in June?
5. Deborah /set out on a trip on Sunday/on Monday?
6. you/see your mother off at the station at eight o'clock/later?
7. she/have lunch with you/by herself?
8. Kate's friends/have a picnic/still try to find a picnic spot at this time?
9. they/wait for him at home/at work?
10. Charles and his partners/discuss a new project/sign a contract?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>What</b>		you		<i><b>doing</b> at this time next week? — <i>I'll be working.</i></i>
<b>Who</b>		you		<i><b>meeting</b> tomorrow? — <i>Some of my friends.</i></i>
<b>Why</b>		she	<i><b>be</b></i>	<i><b>working</b> on Monday? — <i>She has to meet the deadline.</i></i>
<b>Where</b>	<i><b>will</b></i>	they		<i><b>having</b> lunch? — <i>In their canteen.</i></i>
<b>When</b>		she		<i><b>taking</b> her exam? — <i>Next week.</i></i>
<b>How long</b>		he		<i><b>negotiating</b>? — <i>It depends on the clients.</i></i>

**Exercise 25.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

*Example: I'll be finishing this report this time tomorrow. - When will you be finishing this report?*

1. John will be flying to America *next week*.
2. The children will be visiting *their grandparents* at the weekend.
3. Graham will be having a holiday *in Italy* next summer.
4. I will be *sleeping* at this time.
5. They won't be staying in Europe *for another week*.
6. My friend will be presenting at the conference on Friday.
7. We'll be going on a *sightseeing* tour next weekend.
8. They'll be taking *their TOEFL* exam in November.
9. Alex will be getting *a lot of* money in his new job.
10. *A lot of scientists* will be taking part in the roundtable discussion.
11. I will be seeing him tomorrow *at the university*.

12. Their plane will be landing at Heathrow *at about midnight*.  
 13. We'll probably be working late *on Tuesday*.  
 14. The surgeon won't be operating on his patient until Monday *because his patient is not feeling well*.

### TAG QUESTIONS

I		<i>presenting</i>	at the conference tomorrow, <b>won't</b> I?	
You		<i>seeing</i>	her at the weekend, <b>won't</b> you?	
He/She		<i>studying</i>	at Harvard, <b>won't</b> he?	
It	<b>(I'll) will be</b>	<i>sailing</i>	to Greece, <b>won't</b> it?	<i>Yes, (No,)... will(n't)</i>
We		<i>swimming</i>	in the Mediterranean in a week, <b>won't</b> we?	
They		<i>having</i>	a meeting after lunch, <b>won't</b> they?	

  

I		<i>doing</i>	anything wrong, <b>will</b> I?	
You		<i>testing</i>	the new system tomorrow, <b>will</b> you?	
He/She		<i>discussing</i>	the issue at the meeting, <b>will</b> he/she?	
It	<b>won't be</b>	<i>moving</i>	in that direction, <b>will</b> he/she/it?	<i>No,/(Yes,)... won't.</i>
We		<i>dancing</i>	too much in the disco, <b>will</b> we?	
They		<i>celebrating</i>	their wedding without you, <b>will</b> they?	

**Exercise 26.** Add the correct tag to these sentences.

- Tom will be driving to Liverpool, \_\_\_\_\_?
- We'll be attending the meeting at 2 pm, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Bob and Barbara won't be doing up their flat in summer, \_\_\_\_\_?
- I won't be giving a seminar, \_\_\_\_\_?
- He won't be playing jokes on me, \_\_\_\_\_?
- You'll be living in the hostel for the next few years, \_\_\_\_\_?
- At exactly this time tomorrow, Julia will be travelling to Paris, \_\_\_\_\_?
- The travel agent will be telling you about the tour, \_\_\_\_\_?
- You won't be lying in the sun for too much, \_\_\_\_\_?

10. Everyone in the office will be having lunch at that time, \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Have a nice trip! You'll be giving a lecture, \_\_\_\_\_?
12. Steve won't be sitting an exam at 3 pm \_\_\_\_\_?
13. She will be walking in the park in the afternoon, \_\_\_\_\_?
14. The professor won't be teaching this month, \_\_\_\_\_?

### FUTURE SIMPLE vs FUTURE CONTINUOUS

Future Continuous	Future Simple
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a future action in progress <i>I'll be working on Monday.</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a future fact <i>I will work on Monday.</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a planned future action <i>I can't see him at 1 o'clock this afternoon. I'll be having lunch.</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• a sudden decision 1. - <i>I'll be free in an hour.</i> 2. - <i>Fine. We'll have lunch together.</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• with sense verbs to express an action, e.g. to see (= to meet) <i>I'll be seeing her tomorrow at the annual conference.</i></li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• with sense verbs and other verbs not used in a continuous tense <i>Don't buy this coat. You'll look funny in it.</i></li> </ul>

**Exercise 27.** Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets. Use Future Simple or Future Continuous.

*Example:* I (see) them tomorrow, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) them the news.  
*I'll be seeing them tomorrow, and I'll tell them the news.*

1. I can't come to the party at the weekend. I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my friends in Oxford.
2. Mr. Harter is going to stay in the office tomorrow, so at 7 pm he still \_\_\_\_\_ (work).
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) our office next week. I \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) her then.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) the sales manager at the marketing meeting on Friday, and I'm sure she \_\_\_\_\_ (give) me the exact figures then.
5. This time next week, we (lie) on the beach.
6. What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) early on Monday night?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ you (work) all tomorrow evening?
8. They \_\_\_\_\_ (come) round for dinner tomorrow evening.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ (show) them the photographs then.
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/hear) from him for a month — he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in Panama.

10. — How can I get in touch with you while you're out of town?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at the Hilton Hotel. You can reach me there.
11. Sue \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate) in June. After that, she \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) work at an electronics firm.
12. Fred \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at the meeting tomorrow. I \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) with him.
13. At this time next year, I (do) exactly what I am doing now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (attend) classes and (study) hard.
14. — Where's Brenda?  
— Don't you know? She's in hospital.  
— Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) her there tomorrow.
15. — I'm afraid we have no sugar left.  
— Don't worry, I (go) and \_\_\_\_\_ get some.
16. You look tired. Sit down. I (make) you a cup of coffee.
17. Don't worry about me, Mum. I (write) to you every day from the States.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ you (learn) Japanese next year?
19. Look! That plane is approaching the airport. It \_\_\_\_\_ (land) soon.

## FUTURE PERFECT

### **Usage:**

- to talk about something that will be completed by (not later than) a certain time in the future

*I'll have finished work by six o'clock tonight. He'll have been here for a year in January.*

Future Perfect is normally used with such expression as: ***by then/by that time/by the 26<sup>th</sup>***, etc.

## POSITIVE /FORM

***will have + Past Participle (Verb + -ed)***

I  
You  
He/She/It  
We  
You  
They

***will ('ll) have finished\**** by then.



NOTE:

- a) **will** is used with all persons (*I, you, we, they, etc.*).
- b) **shall** is used with **I** or **we**, but in everyday speech, **will** is more common.
- c) The ending of past participle of regular verbs is **-ed**.

\*Spelling of ending **-ed**. See Appendix p.

For a list of irregular past participles see Appendix p. 228–229.

## NEGATIVE FORM

**will not have + Past Participle (Verb + -ed)**

I		will not (won't) have gone by winter.
You		
He/She/It		
We		
You		
They		

## GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b>Will</b>	I		<b>have been</b> there by September? – <i>Yes, ...will./No, ...won't.</i>
	you		
	he/she/it		
	we		
	you		
	they		

NOTE:

a) **Shall** is generally used as a first person question (with **I** or **we**) to make suggestions and offers.

b) **Will** is used as a first person question with /to ask about future.

*Will the death rate have increased by the end of this or next century?*

**Exercise 28.** Put the verbs in brackets in Future Perfect. Then rewrite each sentence as negative or a general question.

*Example: Life will have become (become) more automated by 2100.*

*Life won't have become more automated by 2100.*

*Will life have become more automated by 2100?*

1. The builders \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the roof by Sunday.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) the entire committee by Saturday morning.
3. Another million people \_\_\_\_\_ (become) unemployed by this time next year.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ (be) Prime Minister for ten years by next year.
5. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a way to feed all the people in the world by 2050.
6. In two weeks' time we \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) our exams.
7. Your children \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) to read and write by the age of five.
8. Next November we \_\_\_\_\_ (be) married for fifteen years.
9. I'm sure they \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) home by five o'clock tonight.
10. By the end of this century, we \_\_\_\_\_ (use up) most of the world's oil supplies.

**Exercise 29.** What do you think will have happened by 2030? Here are some ideas to help you.

1. Scientists/discover/cure for AID'S.
2. Atomic energy/replace/oil and coal.
3. Scientists/build/factories in space.
4. Some rare animals/become/extinct.
5. Scientists/learn/to control the weather.
6. The world's population/grow.
7. Living standards/decline.
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

<b>Will</b>	I you he/she/it we you they	<b><i>have completed</i></b> the task by tomorrow or later? – <i>Hopefully, by tomorrow.</i>
-------------	--	---

**Exercise 30.** Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.

*Example:* The leading competitors/run/thirty/forty/kilometres/by the end of the race?

*Will the leading competitors have run thirty or forty kilometres by the end of the race? —Thirty kilometres.*

1. Your father/retire/till the year 2020/2021?
2. She/leave/school/in another three/two/years?
3. The world's population/grow/to eight/nine billion by 2100?
4. They/complete/work/on the great project/by the end of this decade/next decade?
5. Bill/save/\$900/more/by the end of the year?
6. David/have/his exam/by 14<sup>th</sup> December/24<sup>th</sup> December?
7. Your family/be/here for ten years / fifteen years/by the end of this month?
8. The workers/complete/the new bridge/by the end of the year/earlier?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>How long</b>				<b>been</b> there by the end of the month? – (For) <i>two months</i> .
<b>Now much</b>	<b>will</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>saved</b> by the end of the year? – <i>Not much</i> .
<b>When</b>				<b>married</b> for ten years? – (For) <i>five years</i> .

### OBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>What</b>	<b>will</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>done</b> by that time? – <i>My homework</i> .
<b>Who</b>	<b>will</b>	<b>they</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>met</b> at the station by the time the train arrives? – <i>Their friends</i> .

### SUBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<b>will</b>	–	<b>have</b>	<b>been</b> here for a week by then? – <i>The Browns</i> .
<b>Which cities</b>	<b>will</b>	–	<b>have</b>	<b>doubled</b> in size by the year 2010? – <i>Most capital cities</i> .

### TAG QUESTION

I			<b>worked</b> here for 5 years by next year, <b>won't</b> I? – Yes, you will.
He	<b>will</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>completed</b> the task, <b>won't</b> he? – I hope so.
They			<b>come back</b> by then, <b>won't</b> they? – No, they won't.
You			<b>done</b> this work by next Friday, <b>will</b> you? – I'm afraid, I won't.
She	<b>won't</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>written</b> the report by next week, <b>will</b> she? – I hope she will.
We			<b>prepared</b> all the documents by then, <b>will</b> we? – Yes, we will.

**Exercise 31.** Give the correct tag to these sentences. Ask special questions about the information in italics.

*Example:* By the end of this century, we'll have used up many of the world's natural resources, *won't we?*

*How many of the world's natural resources will we have used up by the end of this century?*

1. He'll have finished *this report* by the end of the day.
2. Robots will have replaced *people* for many boring jobs.
3. At the end of next year, the Johnsons will have been divorced *for five years*.
4. In a week's time, she will have typed *your* documents.
5. Next July 10<sup>th</sup>, Mary's parents will have been married *for thirty years*.
6. They won't have completed *the project* by the end of the month.
7. *My father* will have repaired the car by Friday.
8. Politicians probably won't have found a way to secure world peace *for another ten or twenty years*.

## FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS<sup>1</sup>

### Usage:

- When the action is continuous

*By the end of the month he **will have been studying** here for five years.*

Future Perfect Continuous is normally used with **for** to describe a period of time which precedes a point in the future

*We'll **have been living** here for three years in September.*

### NOTE:

Future Perfect Continuous is often used with such verbs as: *learn, lie, live, rain, sit, wait* and *work* to say that what is in progress now will be in progress in the future

*By this time next week, I **will have been working** on this book for a year.*

**Exercise 32.** Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable tense. In some cases, more than one form may be possible. Comment on the use of each form.

1. – \_\_\_\_\_ you (go) on the trip to Berlin tomorrow?  
– Yes, What time \_\_\_\_\_ the coach (leave) in the morning?  
– 7.45, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) early.
2. – Where \_\_\_\_\_ your class (go) for your end-of-course trip?

<sup>1</sup> This tense is not very common in English.

- To St. Petersburg. We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) on June 23rd, the day the term ends.
- How long \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) there?
- About ten days.
- 3. – Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the office now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) you this evening outside the cinema.
  - OK. \_\_\_\_\_ you (take) your umbrella? It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) later in the day.
  - I'm sure you (enjoy) the film this evening. It's very good.
  - I know. The only trouble is that it \_\_\_\_\_ (start) at 6.45 pm.
- 4. – Can you give Joe a message for me?
  - Sure. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him at the meeting this evening.
- 5. – This light doesn't work. The bulb is probably burned out. Where are the new light bulbs?
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) one for you.
- 6. – When are you leaving for Florida?
  - Tomorrow. Just think! Two days from now I \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on the beach in the sun.
  - Sounds great! I \_\_\_\_\_ (think) about you.
- 7. – \_\_\_\_\_ you (see) your parents this Saturday?
  - Sure. Why?
  - Don't forget to give my love to them.
- 8. I know I \_\_\_\_\_ never (write) as well as my sister.
- 9. – What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) after class?
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) at the cafeteria with Cindy. Do you want to join us?
- 10. It's very stuffy in here. \_\_\_\_\_ I (open) the window?
- 11. – \_\_\_\_\_ Sue (be) free at 11.30?
  - No, she \_\_\_\_\_ (give) a press conference at that time.
- 12. Don't worry. I \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) you the money tomorrow.
- 13. The damage we are doing to our environment today \_\_\_\_\_ (affect) the quality of life of future generations.
- 14. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) tomorrow.
- 15. – I don't feel very well this evening.
  - \_\_\_\_\_ I (look) after the children for you?
- 16. – What do you want to be when you grow up?
  - I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) an astronaut.
- 17. By that time we \_\_\_\_\_ (do) all the job.
- 18. – Are you going to be in town next Saturday?
  - No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my aunt in Perm.

19. The committee \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) Stockholm on Sunday morning, \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in Australia on Monday, and \_\_\_\_\_ (start) work on Tuesday.
20. Don't go out without a coat on. You \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) a cold.
21. I can't go out with you on Saturday. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) a friend.
22. – Do you think she \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) her driving test?  
– I'm afraid not. She's too nervous.

### WAYS OF EXPRESSING FUTURE

Tense	Future fact	Future action in progress	Timetable Schedule	Prior plan; intention	Planned event, action	Sudden decision	Prediction	Willingness	Offer, suggestion
Present Simple			✓						
Present Continuous					✓				
Be going				✓			✓		
Future Simple	✓					✓	✓	✓	✓
Future Continuous		✓			✓				
Future Perfect Simple							✓		
Future Perfect Continuous	✓						✓		

**Exercise 33.** Indicate the meaning expressed by the verb in *italics*.

*Example: I am taking four courses next semester. – Planned event, action*

- Next Winter Olympics *will be* in Sydney in South Korea in 2018. \_\_\_\_\_
- The phone is ringing. \_\_\_\_\_  
– I'll answer it.
- Shall I* post this letter for you? \_\_\_\_\_
- My father *is going to* paint my bedroom next summer. \_\_\_\_\_
- The museum *opens* at ten o'clock tomorrow morning. \_\_\_\_\_
- What are you going to do this afternoon.  
– After lunch I *am meeting* a friend of mine. \_\_\_\_\_
- By the time we get there, the film *will have started*. \_\_\_\_\_
- I *will be* careful with the car, I promise. \_\_\_\_\_
- My cousin *is going to* buy a new motorbike. \_\_\_\_\_

10. I'll *be seeing* him tomorrow – I'll give him your message. \_\_\_\_\_
11. What shall I do tomorrow? I know! I'll *go* to the theatre. \_\_\_\_\_
12. My brother's birthday is next week. I'm *giving* him a sweater. \_\_\_\_\_
13. In 50 years there *won't* probably *be* hunger in the world. \_\_\_\_\_
14. What's the matter? *Shall I* call the doctor? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Don't call on me at that time? I'll *be doing* my homework. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Watch out! You're *going* to hurt yourself! \_\_\_\_\_
17. At 8.30 tomorrow morning she'll *be flying* to Boston. \_\_\_\_\_
18. How can we get to the airport? I know! I'll *borrow* Sue's car. \_\_\_\_\_
19. John's plane *arrives* at 6.05 pm next Monday. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Perhaps I'll *see* you in the evening. \_\_\_\_\_
21. I'll *be waiting* at the airport when you arrive. \_\_\_\_\_
22. In a few years Paul *will be* a PhD student. \_\_\_\_\_
23. She'll *have been acting* for ten years by the end of this year. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 34.** Choose the correct or the most suitable answer – A or B.

*Example:* Who do you think \_\_\_\_B\_\_\_\_ the next election?

A. *is winning*                      B. *Will win*

1. – Where are you going with the ladder? - \_\_\_\_\_ the roof.  
A. *I'll repair*                      B. *I'm going to repair*
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ lunch with David at 12.30 on Thursday.  
A. *will have*                      B. *is having*
3. Perhaps Vanessa \_\_\_\_\_ a professional pianist.  
A. *will become*                      B. *is becoming*
4. I feel a bit thirsty. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ something to drink.  
A. *will be having* B. *will have*
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday at the local registry office.  
A. *will get married*                      B. *are getting married*
6. Look out! The glass \_\_\_\_\_ off the table.  
A. *falls*                      B. *is going to fall*
7. Next week my mother \_\_\_\_\_ 45 years old.  
A. *will have become*                      B. *will be*

8. \_\_\_\_\_ your camera at the weekend? Mine is out of order.  
*A. Do you use                      B. Will you be using*
9. – Is that your new stereo?  
 – Yes, but it doesn't work. I \_\_\_\_\_ it back to the shop.  
*A. am taking                      B. am going to take*
10. Your plane \_\_\_\_\_ London at 8.30 am.  
*A. leaves                      B. is leaving*
11. I wonder where we \_\_\_\_\_ twenty years from work.  
*A. will be living    B. are going to leave*
12. By the year 2015, computers \_\_\_\_\_ teachers.  
*A. will replay                      B. will have replaced*
13. – They say it's going to snow today.  
 – Really? I \_\_\_\_\_ my fur coat then.  
*A. am going to wear                      B. will be wear*
14. Don't worry! I \_\_\_\_\_ your letter on my way to work.  
*A. will post                      B. post*
15. Never share a secret with Helen. She \_\_\_\_\_ everybody else.  
*A. will tell                      B. is going to tell*
16. This time next year we \_\_\_\_\_ at Harvard University.  
*A. are going to study                      B. will be studying*
17. – What are your plans for today?  
 – \_\_\_\_\_ to a club.  
 – Sounds great!  
*A. Will you go                      B. Shall we go*

**Exercise 35.** Put the verbs in brackets into a suitable tense. In some cases, more than one form may be possible. Comment on the use of each form.

1. — \_\_\_\_\_ you (go) on the trip to Windsor tomorrow?  
 — Yes, What time \_\_\_\_\_ the coach (leave) in the morning?  
 — 7.45, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) early.
2. — Where \_\_\_\_\_ your class (go) for your end-of-course trip?  
 — To Italy. We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) on June, 23<sup>rd</sup>, the day the term ends.



- How long \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) there?  
 — About ten days.
3. — Well, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the office now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) you this evening outside the cinema.  
 — OK. \_\_\_\_\_ you (take) your umbrella? It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) later in the day.
4. — I'm sure you \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) the film this evening. It's very good.  
 — I know. The only trouble is that it \_\_\_\_\_ (start) at 6.45.
5. — Can you give Joe a message for me?  
 — Sure. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him at the meeting this evening.
6. — This light doesn't work. The bulb is probably burned out. Where are the new light bulbs?  
 — I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) one for you.
7. Get out of my room, or I \_\_\_\_\_ (throw) you out!
8. — When do you leave for Florida?  
 — Tomorrow. Just think! Two days from now I \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) on the beach in the sun.  
 — Sounds great! I \_\_\_\_\_ (think) about you.
9. — \_\_\_\_\_ you (see) your parents this Saturday?  
 — Sure. Why?  
 — Don't forget to give my love to them.
10. I know I \_\_\_\_\_ never (write) as well as my sister.
11. — What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) after class?  
 — I \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) at the cafeteria with Cindy. Do you want to join us?
12. It's very stuffy in here. \_\_\_\_\_ I (open) the window?
13. — Mr. Moran (be) free at 11.30?  
 — No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (give) a press conference at that time.
14. Don't worry. I \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) you the money tomorrow.
15. The damage we do to our environment today \_\_\_\_\_ (affect) the quality of life of future generations.
16. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) tomorrow.
17. — I don't feel very well this evening.  
 — \_\_\_\_\_ I (look) after the children for you?
18. — What do you want to be when you grow up?  
 — I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) an astronaut.  
 — Good for you!
19. By that time we \_\_\_\_\_ (do) all the job.
20. — Are you going to be in town next Saturday?  
 — No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) my aunt in Chicago.

21. The committee \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) Stockholm on Sunday morning,  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in Australia on Monday and \_\_\_\_\_ (start) work  
 on Tuesday.
22. Don't go out without a coat on. You \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) a cold.
23. I can't go out with you on Saturday. I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) a friend.
24. — Do you think she \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) her driving test?  
 — I'm afraid not. She's too nervous.

## ARTICLE

Definite Article	Zero Article
<b>Usage:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>with abbreviations when we can't say them as single words</li> </ul> <p><i>I listen to the news on the BBC.</i>          (= the British Broadcasting Corporation)</p>	<b>Usage:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>with abbreviations when we can say them as single words (acronyms)  <i>We are members of <b>UNESCO</b></i>          [ju: 'neskəʊ]          (= the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization)</li> <li><b>with abstract nouns</b> e.g.          happiness, love, life, death, etc.  <i>Happiness is not a destination. It's a method of life.</i></li> <li><b>with materials</b> when they are considered in a general sense, e.g.          gold, glass, coal, etc.  <i>Glass is a difficult material to cut.</i></li> </ul>

**Exercise 36.** Complete the following sentences with **the** or **zero article**.

- This machine is made of \_\_\_\_\_ copper and \_\_\_\_\_ steel.
- \_\_\_\_\_ EC (=European Community) trades with the rest of the world.
- Money doesn't always bring \_\_\_\_\_ happiness.
- I don't use \_\_\_\_\_ vegetable oil when I'm cooking.
- He can talk for hours about \_\_\_\_\_ democracy
- Which countries belong to NATO ['neɪtəʊ]? (=North Atlantic Treaty Organisation)
- As someone said, \_\_\_\_\_ life is just, one damned thing after another.
- I think this ornament is made of \_\_\_\_\_ glass.
- I'm not interested in the price of \_\_\_\_\_ silver or the price of \_\_\_\_\_ gold.

10. The cigarette lighter's made of \_\_\_\_\_ tin.
11. I'm afraid, the boss will soon lose \_\_\_\_\_ patience and fire me.
12. I've used my computer to learn \_\_\_\_\_ BASIC (=Beginners All-purpose Instruction Code)
13. It's very strange — a shirt made of \_\_\_\_\_ paper.
14. Do you cook by \_\_\_\_\_ gas or \_\_\_\_\_ electricity?
15. \_\_\_\_\_ NASA (= National Aeronautics and Space Administration) had a setback in 1986.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ LSE (= London School of Economics) is a college of London University.

**Exercise 37.** Complete the sentences with *a(n), the, or zero article*.

1. Are you hot? I'll open \_\_\_\_\_ window.
2. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ old people sitting over there?
3. I'll put \_\_\_\_\_ shopping away. Shall I put \_\_\_\_\_ meat into \_\_\_\_\_ freezer?
4. Kate arrives \_\_\_\_\_ home from \_\_\_\_\_ work at about 6.00 every evening.
5. What time do you usually have \_\_\_\_\_ lunch?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean is bigger than \_\_\_\_\_ Indian Ocean.
7. Sue's brother is still in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital.
8. The government plans to hel \_\_\_\_\_ poor and \_\_\_\_\_ unemployed.
9. Phil Collins can play \_\_\_\_\_ drums, \_\_\_\_\_ piano, and \_\_\_\_\_ harmonica.
- 10 grandmother often listens to \_\_\_\_\_ radio in \_\_\_\_\_ bed at night.
- 11 I won't be at \_\_\_\_\_ home at 6 o'clock this evening. I'll still be at \_\_\_\_\_ work.
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ Mont Blanc is higher than \_\_\_\_\_ Mount Etna.
13. I'd like to live in \_\_\_\_\_ small cottage in \_\_\_\_\_ country.
- 14 Which is your favourite meal, \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast, \_\_\_\_\_ lunch, or \_\_\_\_\_ dinner?
15. There's \_\_\_\_\_ good film on at \_\_\_\_\_ cinema this evening.
16. What is government going to do for \_\_\_\_\_ unemployed of \_\_\_\_\_ Great Britain?
17. \_\_\_\_\_ sun is shining brightly today.
18. \_\_\_\_\_ beef is a kind of \_\_\_\_\_ meat.
19. One of the things you need to do when you move to \_\_\_\_\_ new city is to find \_\_\_\_\_ place to live. Most \_\_\_\_\_ newspapers carry \_\_\_\_\_ advertisements (called «want ads») for flats which are for rent.

- If you find \_\_\_\_\_ ad for \_\_\_\_\_ furnished flat, \_\_\_\_\_ flat will probably contain \_\_\_\_\_ cooker, and \_\_\_\_\_ fridge. It will probably have some furniture such as \_\_\_\_\_ beds, \_\_\_\_\_ table, chairs, and maybe \_\_\_\_\_ sofa.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ people wear \_\_\_\_\_ jewellery to look more attractive.
  21. Tommy wants to be \_\_\_\_\_ engineer when he grows up.
  22. There's someone at \_\_\_\_\_ front door.
  23. Mary is wearing \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful ring today. It's made of \_\_\_\_\_ gold and \_\_\_\_\_ rubies.
  24. I'll have \_\_\_\_\_ dozen eggs and \_\_\_\_\_ loaf, please.
  25. Coal is sixty dollars \_\_\_\_\_ ton at the moment.
  26. I'm studying \_\_\_\_\_ French and \_\_\_\_\_ Italian.
  27. I think \_\_\_\_\_ piano is one of \_\_\_\_\_ easiest instruments to play.
  28. It's dark in here. Can you turn on \_\_\_\_\_ light, please?
  29. New York is situated on \_\_\_\_\_ east coast of \_\_\_\_\_ USA.
  30. You mustn't drink \_\_\_\_\_ alcohol.
  31. \_\_\_\_\_ Pacific is one of \_\_\_\_\_ largest oceans in \_\_\_\_\_ world.
  32. \_\_\_\_\_ British spend more hours watching television than anyone else.
  33. This is \_\_\_\_\_ photograph which I like best.
  34. I don't agree with \_\_\_\_\_ people who say that all modern music is rubbish.
  35. The Empire State building is on \_\_\_\_\_ Fifth Avenue, between \_\_\_\_\_ 33<sup>rd</sup> and \_\_\_\_\_ 34<sup>th</sup> Street.
  36. That's \_\_\_\_\_ only folk group whose music I really like.
  37. When \_\_\_\_\_ weather looks rainy, I always carry \_\_\_\_\_ umbrella.
  38. Stonehenge is thousands of years old. It's \_\_\_\_\_ famous prehistoric monument.
  39. What \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful garden!
  40. Jack's got \_\_\_\_\_ very long legs—he's \_\_\_\_\_ fast runner.
  41. When I see him, I'll tell him \_\_\_\_\_ truth.
  42. Do you enjoy going to \_\_\_\_\_ concerts?
  43. You need \_\_\_\_\_ visa to visit some foreign countries, but not all of them.
  44. What's wrong with you? Have you got \_\_\_\_\_ headache?
  45. I think we'll take \_\_\_\_\_ taxi to get to \_\_\_\_\_ airport.
  46. \_\_\_\_\_ YHA (= Youth Hostels Association) is \_\_\_\_\_ international organization which provides cheap residential hostels for young travellers, in particular walkers and cyclists.
  47. There's no need to buy any milk. \_\_\_\_\_ milkman brings it every morning.

48. \_\_\_\_\_ earth goes round \_\_\_\_\_ sun.  
50. What \_\_\_\_\_ lovely children!  
51. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ only child in \_\_\_\_\_ family.  
52. Washington, D.C., is \_\_\_\_\_ capital of \_\_\_\_\_ United States.  
53. Sam is \_\_\_\_\_ civil engineer.  
54. He can't answer \_\_\_\_\_ phone because he's taking \_\_\_\_\_ shower.  
55. We'd like to invite you to \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at our house.

### **BOTH, EITHER, NEITHER**

BOTH = “one and the other”

“both” is used when two people or things are regarded as a group.

#### Both + Plural Noun

*Both children are happy with their presents.*

#### Both + the / these/ my + Noun

*Both the young men will come to the party. / I can recommend both these books to you. / Both her brothers live in London.*

#### Both + of + Pronoun

*Both of us like playing tennis.*

#### Both + (of) + the / these / my + Plural Noun

*Both (of) these restaurants are excellent.*

EITHER = “any one of two”

“either” is used when two people or things are regarded as individuals.

#### Either + Singular Noun

*Either way is acceptable.*

#### Either + of + Pronoun

*Either of them can do the job.*

#### Either + of + the / these / my + Plural Noun

*Can either of your parents speak French?*

NEITHER = ‘not one and not the other’

“neither” is used when two people or things are regarded as individuals and a negative statement is made about them.

Neither + Singular Noun

*Neither man knows what he is doing.*

Neither + of + Pronoun

*Neither of us **is/are** having any luck!*

Neither + of + the / these / my + Plural Noun

*Neither of the children **is/are** at school.*

NOTE

'***Neither of***' is normally used with a singular verb, but it can be used with a plural verb. A singular noun is more common in a formal style.

**Exercise 38.** Choose the correct form of the verb in brackets to complete these sentences. Translate the sentences from English into Russian.

*Example: Neither of us \_\_\_\_\_ (be) hungry. – Neither of us is hungry.*

1. Both of us \_\_\_\_\_ (like) football, but neither of us \_\_\_\_\_ (like) tennis.
2. Both films \_\_\_\_\_ (be) good.
3. Neither road \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the station.
4. Neither restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ (be) expensive.
5. Neither of the children \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to go to bed.
6. Both of these women \_\_\_\_\_ (have) gloomy memories of the World War.
7. Both his sisters \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in London.
8. You can see him on Friday or on Saturday. Either of those days \_\_\_\_\_ (be) convenient for him.

**Exercise 39.** Complete the sentences using **both**, **both of**, **either**, **either of**, **neither**, **neither of**

1. "Have your parents got a car?"—"No, \_\_\_\_\_ them can drive."
2. They don't like each other, and I don't want to invite \_\_\_\_\_ them to my party.
3. "What does *ambidextrous* mean?"—"It means to be able to use \_\_\_\_\_ hands with equal skills."
4. "Which of these shirts do you prefer?"—"I don't really like \_\_\_\_\_ them very much."
5. "What's the capital of Switzerland, Geneva or Zurich?"—"\_\_\_\_\_. It's Berne."

6. We can go to \_\_\_\_\_ restaurant as long as it isn't too far from the city centre.
7. There are two ways to the city centre. You can go along the footpath by the river or you can go along the main road. You can go \_\_\_\_\_ way.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ these pullovers are very nice. I don't know which one to buy.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ her parents is German. Her father is Swiss, and her mother is Italian.
10. "Do you mind which cake I take?"—"No, take \_\_\_\_\_."
11. "Is today the 20<sup>th</sup> or the 21<sup>st</sup>?" — "\_\_\_\_\_. It's the 19<sup>th</sup>."
12. "Are they all studying at Cambridge?"—"No, \_\_\_\_\_ is."

### **BOTH ... AND... / EITHER ... OR ... / NEITHER ... NOR ...**

**Both, either, neither** are used to link ideas in expressions which join nouns, verbs, or other parts of speech.

He both works and studies. (verb + verb)

She plays both tennis and squash. (noun + noun)

The film is both long and boring. (adjective + adjective)

You must either go straight away or wait till tomorrow. (verb + verb)

We'll take either a single or a return ticket. (noun + noun)

That article is neither interesting nor instructive. (adjective + adjective)

Both Ann and Kate are going to major in Biology.

Either Max or my friends are planning to give a graduation party.

Neither Jane nor her brothers like sushi.

#### **NOTE:**

When the subjects are connected by *either ... or / neither ... nor ...*, the verb is usually plural. It is more formal to use the singular.

*Neither the house nor its furnishings is/are new.*

#### **Exercise 40.** Answer the questions.

A. Use **both... and...**

*Example:* You know Jim. Do you know his girlfriend? — *Yes, I know both Jim and his girlfriend.*

1. Sam buys used PCs. Does he sell used PCs?
2. The city suffers from air pollution. Does it suffer from water pollution?
3. You are going to visit London. Are you going to visit Oxford or Cambridge?
4. You are planning a trip to England. Are you planning to go to Scotland?

5. Clare will go on a sightseeing tour with a tour guide. Will she go on a sightseeing tour on her own?
6. Martin can play the trumpet. Can he play the saxophone?
7. They will have to write a persuasive essay. Will they have to write an opinion essay?
8. You are going to study strategic management. Are you going to risk management ?

**B. Use *either... or...***

*Example:* Your sister will meet you at the airport, or your parents will meet you there. Is that right? — Yes, ***either*** my sister ***or*** my parents will meet me at the airport.

1. You'll go to Turkey for your holidays, or you'll go to Egypt. Is that right?
2. They will travel by train, or they will travel by plane. Is that right?
3. Pete has got a Webster dictionary, or Mike has got a Webster dictionary. Is that right?
4. You will go on an excursion to the British Museum, or you will go on an excursion to the Museum of Natural History. Is that right?
5. They are planning to take TOEFL iBT, or they are planning to take IELTS. Is that right?
6. She will major in Chemistry, or she will major in Biology. Is that right?
7. They are going to pack their things tonight, or they are going to pack their things tomorrow morning. Is that right?
8. We can fix lunch for them here, or we can take them to a restaurant. Is that right?

**C. Use *neither... nor...***

*Example:* Nicole's husband doesn't speak French. Do her children speak French? — No, ***neither*** her husband ***nor*** her children speak French.

1. Tom doesn't attend the 9 o'clock lecture. Do his roommates attend the 9 o'clock lecture?
2. Rita doesn't like black coffee. Does she like white coffee?
3. The test won't be too difficult. Will it be easy?
4. They won't have seminars tomorrow. Will they have lectures?
5. Steve won't go on a boat trip this year. Will he go on a boat trip next year?
6. They don't have a fridge in their new apartment. Do they have an electric stove?
9. Monica doesn't enjoy travelling by train. Does she enjoy travelling by plane?
10. They aren't going to stay in hotels. Are they going to stay with their friends?



**Exercise 41.** Rewrite the sentences beginning with the words given. Use **both... and... / either...or ... / neither... nor ...**

*Example:* Sue plays the piano, and she sings. *Sue both plays the piano and sings.*

Tom doesn't like Chemistry, neither do his classmates. *Neither Tom nor his classmates like Chemistry.*

Carol does the washing-up, so does her sister.

*Either Carol or her sister do the washing-up.*

1. My father can't speak English, and he can't write it. My father can neither \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Ken doesn't know the university address, neither does Kate. Neither Ken \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Simon will pass the exam easily, so will Susan. Both Simon \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The journey is going to be exciting. And it is going to be comfortable. The journey is going to be both \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My new flat is larger than my old one, and it is closer to my office. My flat is both \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He isn't reliable, and he isn't hard-working. He is neither \_\_\_\_\_.
7. My brother can't dance and he can't sing. My brother can neither \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Alice doesn't go shopping at weekdays, neither does Janet. Neither Alice \_\_\_\_\_.
9. John will buy a birthday present for Emily. Mary will probably buy a birthday present for Emily, too. Either John \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Sometimes Rita stays in town in summer. Sometimes her grandparents stay in town in summer. Either Rita \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Julie never watches action films, neither does her friends. Neither Julie \_\_\_\_\_.
12. Henry and his mother usually help little Johnny with his schoolwork. Either Henry \_\_\_\_\_.
13. Rex doesn't know the answer to this question, neither does Bobby. Neither Rex \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Alex has lunch in the student canteen, so do his roommates. Both Alex \_\_\_\_\_.

## CLAUSES OF TIME AND CONDITION

Main clause	Time clause	
I'll let you know They'll have completed the project He will do there	when until till before after as soon as by (the time)	I <b>get</b> there.
	Condition clause	
	if in case unless As (so) long as provided providing	everything is OK.

### NOTE:

Future Perfect or Future Perfect Continuous is used with **by...** and **not... till/ until**

***By** the time the company president **retires**, his son **will have become** the president of the firm.*

Mary **will have been doing** the laundry for an hour **by** the time her husband **comes home**.

When the clause of time or condition is the first part of a sentence, a comma often separates it.

*If I see him, I'll phone you. I'll phone you if I see him.*

### Clause of Time

- **when**

*When Jack arrives, he'll tell us about the match. I'll ring you when I get to Bristol.*

- **until/till**

I'll stay *until/till* you get back. *Until/till* I'm sure he's telling me the truth, I won't believe him. I won't have done the job *until/till* he comes.

- **before**

*We won't leave for the airport before David comes. Before he arrives, I'll give the children their toys.*

- **as soon as**

*As soon as the rain stops, I'll go out and buy something for dinner. I'll take the chance of having this job as soon as they offer it.*

- **by the time**

*By the time you get back, we'll have taken care of everything. I will have completed the task by the time she returns.*

**Exercise 42.** Write these sentences, putting the verbs into Future Simple or Present Simple.

*Example:* I give (give) it to them when they visit (visit) us.

I won't send (not/send) the parcel until I hear (hear) from you.

1. As soon as they \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) me, I \_\_\_\_\_ (contact) you.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) you before I \_\_\_\_\_ (fly) to Paris.
3. They \_\_\_\_\_ (send) you the money before you \_\_\_\_\_ (leave).
4. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to him, I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) him your news.
5. She \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) her parents before she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the airport.
6. When she \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) this, she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) pleased.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (send) you a postcard when I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) this when I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) in the office.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (call) you as soon as we \_\_\_\_\_ (sign) the contract.
10. As soon as I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) the results, I \_\_\_\_\_ (let) you know.
11. When they \_\_\_\_\_ (find out) about this, there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) trouble.
12. After I \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) the hospital, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) and see her parents.
13. You probably \_\_\_\_\_ (not/like) him when you \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) him.
14. She \_\_\_\_\_ (do) her homework before she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out
15. The Browns \_\_\_\_\_ (support) their children till their children \_\_\_\_\_ (come) of age.

**Exercise 43.** Complete these sentences using Present Simple in the clause of time, and Future Simple, Future Continuous, Future Perfect, or Future Perfect Continuous in the main clause.

*Example:* I work from 9 am until 7 pm every Monday. Barbara will arrive at about 5 pm.

I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) when Barbara \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive).

*I will be working when Barbara arrives.*

1. Sam is going to phone me on Friday, so I will let you know then. I \_\_\_\_\_ (let) you know as soon as Sam \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) me.
2. I'm going to the supermarket soon. I always buy bread at the supermarket. I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some bread when I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the supermarket.
3. Hurry up, or they \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) lunch by the time we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there.
4. I'll be seeing Helen next week. I'll tell her then. I \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) Helen when I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her.
5. According to the weather forecast, it's going to rain all day tomorrow. We are going to set out at ten o'clock. According to the weather forecast, it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) when we \_\_\_\_\_ (set out) tomorrow.
6. They \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) in the cold for six hours by the time we \_\_\_\_\_ (collect) them.
7. We'll be watching television in the evening. Bob comes home from work at about 8 o'clock. We \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) television until Bob \_\_\_\_\_ (come) home from work.
8. By the time we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to the theatre, the play \_\_\_\_\_ (begin).
9. According to the weather forecast, it's going to get colder. The children are going for a walk in the park after lunch. The children \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) in the park until it \_\_\_\_\_ (get) colder.
10. Tomorrow I'm leaving for home. My whole family is going to meet me at the airport. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the airport, my whole family \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for me.
11. Tomorrow the weather is going to be fine. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (get up) in the morning, the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (shine), the birds \_\_\_\_\_ (sing).
12. — What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) after you \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate)?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (return) home and \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a job. How about you?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here for at least two more years before I \_\_\_\_\_ (return) home, and \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a job.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ (live) here for six months by the time they \_\_\_\_\_ (find) us a new flat.

## Clause of Condition

- **if**

*If you travel all over the world, you'll see a lot of fascinating places. He will become rich and famous if he tries hard enough.*

- **unless = if... not**

*I'll go swimming tomorrow unless it's cold. I'll swimming tomorrow if it's not cold.*

- **if ≠ in case**

**In case** expresses the idea that something probably won't happen, but it is possible.

*I'll make a cake **in case** someone drops in at the weekend.* (Perhaps, someone will drop in at the weekend; I'll make a cake now, whether someone comes or not; then I'll already have the cake.)

**If** expresses **possible** condition, with the main clause expressing result.

*I'll make a cake if someone drops in at the weekend.* (Perhaps, someone will drop in at the weekend; If someone comes, I'll make a cake; But only then, not now.)

- provided (that)/providing (that) / as (so) long as / only if = «if but only if»

**Provided** (that), **providing** (that), **as long as**, **only if** express the idea that there is only one condition which will cause a particular result.  
provided (that)

*He can go to university providing (that) he gets a scholarship.*

**NOTE:**

When **only** if begins a sentence, the subject and the verb of the main sentence are inverted. **Only if it rains, will we stay at home**

**But: We'll stay at home only if it rains.**

**Exercise 44.** Write these sentences, putting the verbs in brackets into Present Simple or Future Simple.

*Example:* If the train is (be) late, we 'll walk (walk).

1. If this suitcase \_\_\_\_\_ (cost) too much, I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a smaller one.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (call) you as long as she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) time.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the party provided you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) too.
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ we (do) in case the taxi \_\_\_\_\_ (not/come)?
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) Peter if I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him tomorrow.

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) next week unless I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) a train ticket.
7. If he \_\_\_\_\_ (see) me here, he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) really angry.
8. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ (be) upset if you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/come) to see him off.
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (let) you use my car as long as you \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) carefully.
10. If it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) this winter, we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) skiing.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/lend) them any money unless they \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) me.
12. You \_\_\_\_\_ (succeed) as a businessman providing that you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) interested in finance and management.
13. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Chicago, you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) some interesting old buildings.
14. If you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/get) enough sleep, you \_\_\_\_\_ always (feel) tired.
15. In case I \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) my exam, I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a party.
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) a party if I \_\_\_\_\_ (fail) my exam.
17. Provided that you \_\_\_\_\_ (train) harder, you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) on the team.
18. Your dad \_\_\_\_\_ (be) angry unless you \_\_\_\_\_ (get) home early.

**Exercise 45.** Rewrite the following sentences using ***unless***.

*Example: I won't stay in the hostel if it doesn't rains.*

— I won't stay in the hostel unless it rains.

1. You won't speak fluent English if you don't practise.
2. It won't be easy to find a job abroad if you don't speak the language of the country well.
3. You won't have a driving license if you are not at least sixteen years old.
4. He'll get hungry during the class if he doesn't eat breakfast.
5. We won't get into the sports club if we don't have a pass.
6. Jill won't pass her exams if she doesn't study hard enough.
7. My parents won't let me go hiking if I don't do study well.
8. She won't get in touch with you if you don't give her your phone number.
9. They will be late for the train if they don't hurry.
10. I will go to the zoo if it's not cold.
11. George won't know what to do if he doesn't listen carefully.
12. Your girlfriend won't forgive you if you don't apologise to her.
13. The dog won't attack you if you don't move.
14. Your neighbours won't complain about the children if they don't make much noise.

**Exercise 46.** Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Then rewrite each sentence beginning with **only if** so that it has a similar meaning to the given sentence.

*Example:* If it \_\_\_\_\_ (not/rain), I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis with Mary. If it doesn't rain. I'll play tennis with Mary. Only if it doesn't rain, will I play tennis with Mary.

1. If they \_\_\_\_\_ (go) by train, they \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there fast.
2. It \_\_\_\_\_ (switch) on if you (press) the button.
3. My friend and I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the party if we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an invitation.
4. My dad \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) me to the university if I \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) early.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) the early bus if you \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) before 6 am.
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ (trust) you if you \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) lying.
7. My mum \_\_\_\_\_ (start) worrying about me if I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/call) her at least every other day.
8. If Michael \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the risk, he \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the race.
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ (not/employ) you for the job if you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) enough experience and good qualifications.
10. If parents and their children \_\_\_\_\_ (not/try) to understand each other at the very beginning, they \_\_\_\_\_ (not/get) along well in future.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) run down if I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/get) a nice long holiday.
12. Mr Simons \_\_\_\_\_ (retire) to a quiet place in the country, if he \_\_\_\_\_ (know) for sure that the company doesn't need him any longer.
13. Andrew \_\_\_\_\_ (go) \_\_\_\_\_ hitch-hiking if his parents \_\_\_\_\_ (let) him go.
14. Tom's family \_\_\_\_\_ (have) enough money for his living if he \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a well-paid job.

**Exercise 47.** Complete the following sentences with **if** or **in case**. Prove your choice.

*Example:* We'll visit Robert if we have some free time.

(We'll probably have some free time. If we do, we'll visit Robert.)

I'll take my umbrella in case it rains later on.

(It will probably rain later on. I will take my umbrella now, whether it rains or not; because if it rains, I don't want to get wet in the rain.)

1. Take some sandwiches \_\_\_\_\_ you get hungry.
2. I'll take you to the swimming pool \_\_\_\_\_ you hurry.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ it's their wedding anniversary, I'll send them a card.

4. I'll never speak to you again \_\_\_\_\_ you tell anyone about my secret.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you see Marina, give her a message from me, please.
6. Will she go to college \_\_\_\_\_ she has good grades in her exams?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ it's windy, Derek will go windsurfing.
8. You'll buy fresh fish \_\_\_\_\_ you go the market early.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I pass a greengrocer's, I'll buy some strawberries.
10. Dave's boss will fire him \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't treat his clients properly.
11. Bob will ring me \_\_\_\_\_ there're any problems.
12. Will you be upset \_\_\_\_\_ he doesn't come?
13. We'll walk home \_\_\_\_\_ we miss the last train.
14. We'll close all the windows \_\_\_\_\_ it rains while we're out.
15. You should carry some kind of identification with you \_\_\_\_\_ you have an accident.

**Exercise 48.** Complete the following dialogue using *if* or *when*.

- What time are you coming on Saturday, Harry?
- I'm not sure yet. There's a train from Bath at 10 am. \_\_\_\_\_ I take that one, I'll arrive at 12.30 am.
- The next train is at 11.45 am. \_\_\_\_\_ I take that one, I won't be there until 2 o'clock.
- Will you phone me \_\_\_\_\_ you know which train you're catching? I'd like to meet you at the station \_\_\_\_\_ you arrive.
- Well, I'll phone you tomorrow. But \_\_\_\_\_ I don't, I'll phone you on Thursday evening. OK?
- All right. What would you like to do \_\_\_\_\_ you are here on Saturday?
- Shall we go for a walk \_\_\_\_\_ the weather is fine?
- Sure. We could go to the zoo \_\_\_\_\_ you like!

**Exercise 49.** Choose the correct word for each sentence.

*Example:* You can drive my car *unless/providing* you drive it carefully.  
(providing — is the correct word)

1. *Unless/provided* he chooses his words more carefully, he'll get in trouble.
2. I'm playing tennis tomorrow *unless/providing* it's raining.
3. *Providing/unless* she studies hard, she'll pass her exams.
4. We're going to start painting the house tomorrow *unless/provided* it's not raining.
5. You can smoke in here *unless/provided* you leave the window open to let the smoke out.
6. George doesn't trust anyone. He won't lend you any money *unless/as long* as you promise in writing to pay him back.



7. You can go out *as long as/unless* you promise to be back before 12 o'clock.
8. The children can stay here *unless/providing* they don't make too much noise.
9. I'm going now *unless/provided* you want me to stay.
10. We'll be late *unless/provided* we hurry.
11. I'd like to ask you a question *unless/providing* you're too busy at the moment.
12. We'll do the repairs on Friday, 13 *provided/unless* you are superstitious.

**Exercise 50.** Choose the correct or a most suitable answer A, B or C.

*Example: We'll have a picnic tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ A \_\_\_\_\_ it rains.*

*A. Unless    B. Provided    C. When*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you don't wear your coat, you'll be cold.  
*A. Unless    B. In case    C. If*
2. You can borrow my camera \_\_\_\_\_ you're careful with it.  
*A. Till    B. As long as    C. After*
3. \_\_\_\_\_ I win this lottery, will I go on a round-the-world cruise.  
*A. If    B. Only if    C. In case*
4. I'll take enough food \_\_\_\_\_ I get really hungry.  
*A. In case    B. If    C. As soon as*
5. You'll have your breakfast \_\_\_\_\_ you brush your teeth.  
*A. When    B. As long as    C. If*
6. I'll be waiting for him \_\_\_\_\_ he returns from the expedition.  
*A. So long as    B. Until    C. Unless*
7. I'm going to Bristol in the morning this afternoon. I'll ring you \_\_\_\_\_ I get there.  
*A. If    B. When    C. Until*
8. I'll see you on the 6.30 bus \_\_\_\_\_ I get up early enough!  
*A. When    B. After    C. If*
9. They'll play go to play football \_\_\_\_\_ they get ready for their tomorrow's test.  
*A. Till    B. After    C. In case*
10. I'll join you \_\_\_\_\_ I finish this job.  
*A. As soon as    B. Unless    C. Until*
11. In Britain, you can marry at the age of sixteen \_\_\_\_\_ you have your parents' permission.  
*A. Providing    B. Unless    C. When*
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you tell the truth, everything will be all right.  
*A. Unless    B. Provided    C. Only if*

**Exercise 51.** Complete the following with your own words. Use **will/be going to/will be+ing** and Present Simple.

*Example:* When I \_\_\_\_\_ this afternoon, I \_\_\_\_\_

— When I come home this afternoon, I'm going to write a letter to my parents and then I'll go to the post office and send it.

After I \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning I \_\_\_\_\_

Tomorrow I \_\_\_\_\_ before I \_\_\_\_\_

I \_\_\_\_\_ when I \_\_\_\_\_ next year.

As soon as my English class \_\_\_\_\_, I \_\_\_\_\_

I \_\_\_\_\_ until my friend \_\_\_\_\_

When I \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, I \_\_\_\_\_

I \_\_\_\_\_ till the end \_\_\_\_\_

I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ only if \_\_\_\_\_

I will go to \_\_\_\_\_ providing that \_\_\_\_\_

I can't \_\_\_\_\_ unless \_\_\_\_\_

You should \_\_\_\_\_ in case \_\_\_\_\_

Only if \_\_\_\_\_, will I \_\_\_\_\_

I will \_\_\_\_\_ as long as...

I won't... if...

## GRAMMAR IN CONTEXT

**Exercise 52.** Answer the following questions.

1. Will you be travelling anywhere by train/plane this month?
2. Will you be driving anywhere in the near week?
3. Will you be seeing any members of your family?
4. Do you think you will visit England within the next year?
5. Do you think you will learn to speak English really fluently?
6. Where will you be at this time tomorrow and what will you be doing?
7. How do people predict future? Do they use crystal balls, tea leaves, horoscopes, or other things to tell fortune? Do you believe in such ways of predicting future?
8. Do you ever try to predict changes in your life? If you do, what methods do you use? How often do your predictions come true?
9. Would you like to know what's in store for you?

**Exercise 53.** Ask your partner about future changes in his/her life.

*Example: You:* Do you think you'll continue your education?

*Your partner:* I think so./I don't think so. I hope so./I hope not./ Perhaps./ Probably./Definitely.

**Exercise 54. "If only" game.** This game may be played with any number of students. The first player tells the student next to him/her what he/she will do if he/she, e.g. goes abroad to study.

*He starts:* If I decide to study abroad, I'll first apply for a grant.

*The student next to him/her says:* *If I apply for a grant to study abroad, I'll take either TOEFL or IELTS.*

The next student uses the end of the previous sentence to make the beginning of his/her own sentence.

Continue until there are no more ideas, and then you may start again with a different beginning.

You may use one of these ideas to start the game *If I get rich, ...*

If I find myself on a desert island somewhere in the Pacific,...

If I meet the President of Russia,...

If I drop out university,...

If I save up some money, ...

If I go out more,...

If I eat junk food,...

If I learn to drive,...

If I don't have a job,...

If I don't keep fit,...

**Exercise 55.** What will life be like 100 years from now?

There won't be any more cars. Most people will fly private helicopters. Robots will do housework. Computers will do office work. Children won't have to go to school; they'll learn from computers at home ...

Use the following ideas to continue the story:

space travel;

leisure time:

world currency;

world language;

population explosion;

global warming;

wars, etc.

**Exercise 56.** Comment on the proverbs.

1. What will be, will be.
2. Don't trouble trouble till trouble troubles you.
3. If you run after two hares, you'll catch none.

**TEST YOURSELF (UNIT 1)**

**#1.** There are some mistakes in each of the following sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. I won't probably have dinner tonight.
2. They never complete that project unless they introduce the latest technologies.
3. Don't put on this hat. You'll be looking funny in it.
4. She isn't a neighbour of neither of the girls.
5. I think the government are going to win the next election.
6. Don't worry about the dog. It is biting you
7. This time next week we'll have eaten lunch on the plane
8. Only if he has a lot of money, she will marry him
9. If you leave at once, I'll call the police
10. The time is money.

**# 2.** Choose the best answer A, B, or C.

1. Keep in touch, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*A. won't you      B. will you      C. shall we?*
2. — \_\_\_\_\_ your car this morning? — No. Do you want to borrow it?  
*A. Will you be using      B. Will you use      C. Do you use*
3. Everybody will be taking that exam, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
*A. won't he or she      B. won't they      C. will he*
4. They always talk openly to one another when either of them hurt.  
*A. feel      B. are feeling      C. feels*
5. — It's cold in here. — I \_\_\_\_\_ the heater on. — Thank you.  
*A. will be turning      B. am turning      C. will turn*
6. She can \_\_\_\_\_ drive her own car there \_\_\_\_\_ hire a car at the airport, whatever she prefers.  
*A. both... and      B. either... or      C. neither... nor*
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ anything before you \_\_\_\_\_ him to.  
*A. won't do ... tell      B. doesn't do ... will tell      C. won't do ... won't tell*
8. I think Max \_\_\_\_\_ the job. He's got a lot of experience.  
*A. is going to get      B. will get      C. will be getting*

9. \_\_\_\_\_ it doesn't rain, we'll go to the beach.  
*A. If B. In case C. Only if*
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ for 5 years when I get my degree.  
*A. will study B. will have studied C. will have been studying*
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ to you when the game \_\_\_\_\_ over.  
*A. will talk ...is B. will talk... will be C. am going to talk... will be*
12. Jan will stay in the USA \_\_\_\_\_ s he gets a residence permit.  
*A. provided B. unless C. in case*
15. «Do you want tea or coffee? »—» \_\_\_\_\_. I don't mind.»  
*A. Neither B. Either C. Both*
15. \_\_\_\_\_ experience is a comb which life gives you after you lose your hair.  
*A. The ... the B. —...— C. An ... the*
16. By the time he \_\_\_\_\_ out of the office, all the shops will have probably closed.  
*A. come B. comes C. will come*
17. He will learn to speak \_\_\_\_\_ English \_\_\_\_\_ French.  
*A. both ... and B. either... nor C. neither... or*
18. \_\_\_\_\_ you tell me the whole story, I won't help you.  
*A. Unless B. As long as C. In case*
19. Rachel is leaving \_\_\_\_\_ tonight \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. She's decided to stay here for another week.  
*A. both ... and B. neither... nor C. either... or*
20. I think Sue will be happy when she knows that \_\_\_\_\_ NASA has chosen her as an astronaut.  
*A. the B. — C. A*

## UNIT 2: REMEMBERING THE PAST

### *Focus on*

- *Education*
- *Ambitions*
  
- *Past Simple*
- *Regular and Irregular Verbs*
- *Used to/Would*
- *Past Continuous*
- *Past Continuous vs Past Simple*
- *Further Practice: Article*

### Past simple

#### *Usage:*

- to talk about a complete action or an event in the past. The action can be a short one:

*I **missed** the bus. I **asked** a question.*

or a long one:

*I **lived** there for years. I **walked** for hours.*

When we talk about actions and situations in the past we use:

a) adverbs of frequency to talk about habits

**always**     *At school he **always** complained about bad food.*

**usually**     *When I was a child, I **usually** went to the cinema with my parents.*

**seldom**     *Jack's parents **seldom** went on holiday when he was a little boy.*

**never**       *My brother **never** missed a classical guitar performance.*

b)            adverbs of sequence to order events

**yesterday**   morning/afternoon/evening; the day before **yesterday**;

*Kate worked **yesterday afternoon**.*

last		night/week/month/year;
		spring/summer/autumn/winter;
		Monday/Tuesday, etc.;

*Jane moved into a new flat **last week**.*

five minutes		ago
three hours		
five days		
a week		
two months		
a year		

*He passed all his exams **two months ago**.*

<b>long ago</b>	<i><b>Long ago</b>, people learned to make musical instruments.</i>
<b>(many) years later</b>	<i><b>Years later</b> people learned to make more elaborate instruments.</i>
<b>many years ago</b>	<i><b>Many years ago</b> my mother taught me to play the piano.</i>
<b>after that</b>	<i><b>After that</b> / started taking piano classes with a professional pianist.</i>
<b>(soon) afterwards</b>	<i><b>Soon afterwards</b> I played the piano in many piano performances.</i>
<b>in those days</b>	<i><b>In those days</b> piano performances were quite popular.</i>
<b>then</b>	<i><b>Then</b> I gave up playing music.</i>
<b>at that time</b>	<i><b>At that time</b> I was rather keen on sports.</i>

### POSITIVE FORM – Regular verbs

I		<i><b>worked*</b> a lot last night.</i>
You		
He/She/It		
We		
You		
They		

Spelling of ending—**ed**. See Appendix p. 227

Pronunciation of the <b>-ed</b> ending		
/id/	/t/	/id/
after the sounds /t/ and /d/	after the unvoiced sounds (except /t/)	after voiced sounds (except /d/)
waited /'wertɪd/ started /'stɑ:tɪd/ ended /'endɪd/ needed /'ni:ɪd/	hoped /həʊpt/ looked /lʊkt/ touched /tʌtʃt/ washed /wɒʃt/ kissed /kɪst/ danced /dɑ:nst/ laughed /lɑ:ft/	played /'pleɪd/ opened /'əʊpənd/ raised /reɪzd/ lived /lɪvd/ filled /fɪld/ showed /ʃəʊd/ agreed /ə'gri:d/

**Exercise 1.** Put these words into three groups according to the pronunciation of the **-ed**.

<i>Example:</i>	/id/	/t/	/d/		
	painted	passed	failed		
passed	coughed	watched	decided	annoyed	remembered
failed	stopped	wished	locked	hated	borrowed
painted	invented	used	listened	planned	recommended
existed	loved	studied	admitted	advised	warned
landed	finished	worked	carried	wanted	asked

**Exercise 2.** Complete the sentences using the words in the list provided below. Use Simple Present or Simple Past.

stay	finish	listen	rain	invite	cook	wait
happen	smile	watch	visit	work	ask	

*Example: Mike often asks questions. He asked a lot of questions in class yesterday.*

- Helen usually \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus at a bus stop in front of her house.  
She \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus there yesterday morning.
- It often \_\_\_\_\_ in autumn. It \_\_\_\_\_ heavily yesterday.  
Angela has a job in a library where she \_\_\_\_\_ five days a week.  
She \_\_\_\_\_ there yesterday.
- Tommy's teacher is an friendly person. She often \_\_\_\_\_ when she's talking to her students.
- Lily and Jack \_\_\_\_\_ their grandparents every weekend.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ them last weekend too.
- Bill is a good cook. Yesterday he \_\_\_\_\_ a delicious dinner for his family.
- I usually \_\_\_\_\_ to the news on the Internet, but last night I \_\_\_\_\_ to the news on the radio.
- Ann seldom \_\_\_\_\_ her homework before midnight. But yesterday she \_\_\_\_\_ her homework at 10 pm.
- I usually \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of people to my birthday party. But last year I \_\_\_\_\_ only my very close friends.
- Take care! This crossroads is extremely dangerous. Accidents often \_\_\_\_\_ here. A serious accident \_\_\_\_\_ at this crossroads a couple of days ago.
- In the evening my parents \_\_\_\_\_ at home and \_\_\_\_\_ TV. As usual, they \_\_\_\_\_ at home and \_\_\_\_\_ TV last night.



## POSITIVE FORM—Irregular Verbs

Irregular verbs<sup>1</sup> are irregular in *Past Simple* in the positive only (not in the negative or question form)

I	<b><i>had</i></b> a lecture yesterday.
You	<b><i>made</i></b> the right decision.
He/She/It	<b><i>came</i></b> * to the station in time.
We	<b><i>took</i></b> that course last semester.
You	<b><i>spent</i></b> too much money on your holiday.
They	<b><i>saw</i></b> us during the conference.

I	<b><i>was</i></b> born in Moscow.
You	<b><i>were</i></b> good at English.
He	<b><i>was</i></b> 6 years old when he went to school.
She	<b><i>was</i></b> in Paris some years ago.
It	<b><i>was</i></b> the most interesting event in my life.
We	<b><i>were</i></b> at the opera yesterday.
You	<b><i>were</i></b> late for classes on Monday.
They	<b><i>were</i></b> in the country at the weekend.

**Exercise 3.** Underline the word which does not belong to each list. Give the present tense form of the verbs.

*Example:* walked typed ran climbed (run)

- |             |          |         |         |
|-------------|----------|---------|---------|
| a) studied  | cut      | read    | sent    |
| b) worked   | listened | watched | saw     |
| c) thought  | carried  | lent    | brought |
| d) cooked   | shook    | rode    | forgave |
| a) disliked | closed   | meant   | showed  |
| b) phoned   | sank     | fought  | rang    |
| c) said     | visited  | struck  | grew    |
| d) dealt    | agreed   | stopped | tried   |

**Exercise 4.** Complete the sentences putting the verbs provided below in Past Simple. Use each verb only once.

<i>sell</i>	<i>wear</i>	<i>hurt</i>	<i>come</i>	<i>spend</i>
<i>get</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>wake up</i>	<i>make</i>	<i>buy</i>
<i>fly</i>	<i>drive</i>	<i>creep</i>	<i>fall</i>	<i>run</i>
<i>cost</i>	<i>keep</i>	<i>drink</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>rise</i>
<i>do</i>	<i>lie</i>	<i>see</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>understand</i>

<sup>1</sup> List of irregular verbs. See Appendix p. 228–229

*Example:* They *drove* from London to Manchester last weekend.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ early, and \_\_\_\_\_ out of bed.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ nothing at the party, because we were not hungry.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful dress to the party.
4. Don \_\_\_\_\_ down the stairs and \_\_\_\_\_ his leg.
5. We needed money badly, so we \_\_\_\_\_ our car.
6. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ a laptop.
7. On Monday I \_\_\_\_\_ to London to see a friend of mine.
8. My niece \_\_\_\_\_ different pets, when she was a girl.
9. The price of petrol \_\_\_\_\_ again last month.
10. I first \_\_\_\_\_ Clark at the party only yesterday.
11. Dan \_\_\_\_\_ the marathon in two hours.
12. Olga \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of friends, when she was on holiday in the Netherlands.
13. They \_\_\_\_\_ champagne to celebrate their wedding anniversary.
14. They \_\_\_\_\_ home late last night.
15. She \_\_\_\_\_ a headache yesterday.
16. As teenagers, we \_\_\_\_\_ each other very well.
17. He was so tired, that he \_\_\_\_\_ down for a while on the sofa.
18. They \_\_\_\_\_ to Spain the day before yesterday.
19. In 2015, I \_\_\_\_\_ an office job for six weeks.
20. We \_\_\_\_\_ upstairs so as not to wake the grandpa.

**Exercise 5.** Think about last year. Use the prompts for each item to write a sentence with Past Simple.

1. something you did for the first time \_\_\_\_\_.
2. a favour you did for someone \_\_\_\_\_.
3. a concert you went to or heard \_\_\_\_\_.
4. a place you visited \_\_\_\_\_.
5. a book you read \_\_\_\_\_.
6. a film you saw \_\_\_\_\_.
7. the food you ate \_\_\_\_\_.
8. some new English words you learnt \_\_\_\_\_.
9. some interesting problems you discussed \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 6.** In the following paragraph, there are 18 irregular verbs. Complete the text about Henry. Use the past simple.

Example: Henry \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) some cigarettes. — Henry bought some cigarettes.

Last weekend, Henry \_\_\_\_\_ (go) fishing in the river near our house. He \_\_\_\_\_ (choose) a quiet spot under a tree and \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) there for hours, but not one fish \_\_\_\_\_ (swim), and he \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) nothing. So he \_\_\_\_\_ (lay) down his rod and \_\_\_\_\_ (take) out a book to read. To keep mosquitoes away, he \_\_\_\_\_ (light) a cigarette, but soon he \_\_\_\_\_ (find) that he was sitting on an ant-heap. The ants \_\_\_\_\_ (bite) his legs. He \_\_\_\_\_ (throw) the cigarette away in disgust. Then he stepped on his rod and \_\_\_\_\_ (break) it. The book \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) into the stream. Finally, Henry \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) his temper: his legs \_\_\_\_\_ (hurt) him, his rod \_\_\_\_\_ (lie) in pieces, and he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) no fish. He \_\_\_\_\_ (set) off for home and (swear) never to go fishing again.

**Exercise 7.** Complete the sentences. Use *I was, We were, etc.*

Example: I had a wonderful holiday last summer. I was happy.

1. We laughed a lot at last night's film. \_\_\_\_\_ very funny.
2. Denny worked late yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ tired.
3. The children watched a horror film last Sunday. \_\_\_\_\_ really frightened.
4. Yesterday we stayed at home the whole day. \_\_\_\_\_ cold and wet.
5. Anita and Grace ate a lot for dinner. \_\_\_\_\_ hungry.
6. I left the beauty contest in the middle. \_\_\_\_\_ bored.
7. Tom and I visited an exhibition of modern painting yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ impressed.
8. You failed your exam yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ too nervous.
9. Barry's grandmother died last year. \_\_\_\_\_ very old.
10. Anna's friend phoned her from New York. \_\_\_\_\_ really excited.

**Exercise 8.** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets. Use Past Simple:

live	build	eat	hunt	play
be(x2)	collect	fight	kill	stay
bring	creep	have	make	use

About 1<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub> million years ago, small groups of people *lived* by the side of a lake in East Africa, now called Olduvai Gorge. We call these people «homo habilis», which mean «skillful man». Fossil remains tell us many things about these people, who \_\_\_\_\_ our direct ancestors. They \_\_\_\_\_ about 1.5m tall. They \_\_\_\_\_ for their food and \_\_\_\_\_ their kill back to their camp. The hunters \_\_\_\_\_ no weapons and probably \_\_\_\_\_ sharp pieces of stone to cut up meat to carry it home. They \_\_\_\_\_ the meat raw. They also \_\_\_\_\_ tools from stones. Homo habilis \_\_\_\_\_ shelters of branches for protection from animals and cold winds. The women \_\_\_\_\_ near the camp with the children. They \_\_\_\_\_ eggs, berries and small animals to eat. The children probably - \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ as children today.

**Exercise 9. A.** Write 10 true sentences about things you did, people you met, or places you went to. In addition, write 10 true sentences about things you had to do yesterday.

B. Think of something you did or learnt in the past. Write a short paragraph about that experience. Include adverbs of sequence.

C. Think about the time when you were younger. Did you do things which annoyed your family members or friends? What did you always do? What did you never do? Use adverbs of frequency in each of your sentences.

## NEGATIVE FORM

I	
You	
He/She/It	<b>did not (didn't)</b> use much water last summer
We	
You	
They	

I (You/He, etc.) **didn't have to wait** long.

I	<b>was not (wasn't)</b> born in Moscow.
He/She/It	<b>was not (wasn't)</b> there yesterday.
You/We/They	<b>were not (weren't)</b> at work on Monday.

**Exercise 10.** Make the following positive sentences negative.

*Example:* She spoke to me at the party. — *She didn't speak to me at the party.*

He had to find a new job. — *He didn't have to find a new job.*

1. I played squash last night.
2. Polly had to move to another apartment.
3. Mr Stanley stayed for dinner.
4. Sally told me about her engagement to John.
5. He cried a lot as a baby.
6. She felt very lonely in new surroundings.
7. Sam watched TV all evening.
8. I bought some new clothes last week.
9. He had to follow the instructions very carefully.
10. Mr Cooper had to retire last year.
11. My elder brother worked as a volunteer two years ago.
12. James returned from his exchange programme last month.
13. The train arrived on time.
14. He made a bad mistake.
15. They had to leave for the airport at 5 am.
16. She had a headache yesterday.
17. Mr Benson and his wife were in Canada a month ago.
18. The weather was too hot in Boston last summer.
19. They had to send their son to a boarding school.

**Exercise 11.** Read what Bill says about his day off.

I usually sleep till noon. I get up and have a big breakfast. Then I go to a supermarket to buy some food. Afterwards I go to the gym train. Later in the afternoon I cook my lunch and play computer games. In the evening I go out. My friends and I go to a jazz club or to a pub. I come home rather late. I go to bed after midnight. I sleep well.

Yesterday wasn't a typical day off. He did none of the things he usually does. Write what he didn't do yesterday.

He didn't sleep till noon. He...

**Exercise 12.** Write ten sentences about what you didn't do yesterday.

**Exercise 13.** Complete the sentences. Put the verb in brackets into the correct form, positive or negative.

*Example:* The film was boring. I didn't enjoy (not/enjoy) it very much.

Is your essay ready? Yes, I finished (finish) it yesterday.

1. The police \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) Roland on his way home.
2. Sorry, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) time to phone you yesterday. I was too busy.

3. The hotel \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) very expensive. It \_\_\_\_\_ (not/cost) very much.
4. Rita \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) thirsty. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not/drink) anything.
5. The bed \_\_\_\_\_ (be) uncomfortable. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/sleep) very well.
6. Rosie \_\_\_\_\_ (study) very hard and \_\_\_\_\_ (graduate) with honours.
7. The manager was in a meeting, and his secretary \_\_\_\_\_ (not/want) to disturb him.
8. Brian and Chuck \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis yesterday. Chuck is a much worse player than Brian, so Chuck \_\_\_\_\_ (lose).
9. We \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) Dolly to our housewarming party, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (refuse) to come.
10. Madame Tussaud \_\_\_\_\_ (start) making models in wax as a teenager.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) as a waiter five years ago.
12. The Carters \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) for their summer holiday yesterday.
13. He \_\_\_\_\_ (wake up) at 7 o'clock this morning.

**Exercise 14.** Complete the story. Use the verbs in brackets in Past Simple.

Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a terrible day. Everything \_\_\_\_\_ (go) wrong. First, Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (oversleep). His alarm clock \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) off. He \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) up when he \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) some noise outside his window. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) 9.30. He \_\_\_\_\_ (get) dressed quickly and \_\_\_\_\_ (run) to class. But he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late, and the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ (be) very angry. After his morning classes, Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the canteen for lunch. He \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an embarrassing accident there. He \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) his tray with some food on it and some of the dishes \_\_\_\_\_ (break). When Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) the tray, everyone in the canteen \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at him. He \_\_\_\_\_ (get) a second tray of food and \_\_\_\_\_ (pay) for his lunch again. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) down at a table in the corner by himself, he \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) his burger and \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) a bottle of Coke. After lunch Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (go) outside. He \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) under a tree near the classroom building. One of his friends \_\_\_\_\_ (approach) him. They \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) about their classes and \_\_\_\_\_ (relax). Everything \_\_\_\_\_ (be) fine. But when Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) up, he \_\_\_\_\_ (step) in a hole and \_\_\_\_\_ (break) his ankle. His friend \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) him to the hospital. After the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ (take) X-rays of Mike's

ankle, he \_\_\_\_\_ (put) a cast on it. Mike's friend \_\_\_\_\_ (take) him home and \_\_\_\_\_ (help) him up the stairs to his apartment. When they \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to the door of Mike's apartment, he \_\_\_\_\_ (look) for his key. He \_\_\_\_\_ (look) in his wallet and in his pockets. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) no key. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (knock) on the door. But his roommate \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) at home. So Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on the floor outside his apartment and \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for his roommate to get home.

### REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS WHICH ARE EASILY CONFUSED

<b>to raise—raised (reg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>Andy raised his hand.</i>	<b>to rise—rose (irreg.)</b> (no object) <i>The sun rose at 5 am.</i>
<b>to set—set (irreg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>She set her heavy bag on the floor.</i>	<b>to sit—sat (irreg.)</b> (no object) <i>She sat in the back row.</i>
<b>to lay—laid (irreg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>He laid his coat on the sofa.</i>	<b>to lie—lay (irreg.)</b> (no object) <i>He lay awake for a long time.</i> <b>to lie—lied (reg.)</b> <i>She lied to her husband, so she could go out.</i>
<b>to find—found (irreg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>He found a good job last week.</i>	<b>to found—founded (reg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>He founded the Centre for Journalism Studies at University College in Cardiff.</i>
<b>to hang—hung (irreg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>He hung his coat on the hook.</i>	<b>to hang—hanged (reg.)</b> (to kill as a punishment) <i>They hanged him for murder.</i>
<b>to wind [waɪnd]—wound (irreg.)</b> (+ an object; no object) <i>The road wound uphill. He wound (up) his watch.</i>	<b>to wound—wounded (reg.)</b> (+ an object) <i>They wounded the robber but he managed to escape.</i>

**Exercise 15.** Choose the right verb.

*Example:* Kate (*set/sat*) her clothes on the chair a few minutes ago. — *set*

1. He (*raised/rose*) himself into a sitting position.
2. They (*hanged/hung*) the picture on the wall

3. Ken (*lay/laid*) his shaving brush on the shelf.
4. I (*found/founded*) the address you wanted.
5. We were so tired after Saturday's party, we (*lied/lay*) in bed all Sunday morning.
6. She went to the window and (*raised/rose*) the blinds.
7. When he (*set/sat*) his glass on the table, he spilled a little drink.
8. He was not careful with the gun and (*wound/wounded*) himself.
9. In the 19th century people were (*hanged/hung*) for minor crimes.
10. I know Peter (*laid/lie*) when he said he was going to settle down in Britain.
11. They (*set/sat*) there in shock and disbelief.
12. My grandfather (*found/founded*) the family business in 1979.
13. The clock went for ten days after I (*wound/wounded*) it.
14. The smoke from our fire (*raised/rose*) straight up in the air.

### GENERAL QUESTIONS

1. <b>Did</b>	I You he/ she/it we you they	<b>go/return</b> home after work? – <b>Yes, / (No,)</b>	you I he/ she/it you we they	<b>did(n't).</b>
---------------	--	---	--	------------------

2. <b>Was</b>	I/he/she	interested in Biology at school? – <b>Yes,/(No,) I/he/she/wasn't.</b>		
<b>Was</b>	it	difficult? – <b>Yes,/(No,) I/he/she/wasn't.</b>		
<b>Were</b>	you	keen on board games? – <b>Yes,/(No,) I/he/she/wasn't.</b>		
<b>Were</b>	We you they	born in Moscow? – <b>Yes,/(No,)</b>	you we they	<b>were(n't).</b>

3. <b>Did</b>	I you he/she we you they	<b>have</b> many friends at school? – <b>Yes,/(No,)</b>	I he/she we they	<b>did(n't).</b>
---------------	---	---	---------------------------	------------------

**Did** the house **have** a good view? – **Yes,/(No,) it did(n't).**  
**Did** he **have to resit** the exam? – **Yes,/(No,) he did(n't).**



**Exercise 16.** Make these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*Example:* I finished work early last night.

— *Did you finish work early last night?* — *Yes, I did.*

I didn't understand his question.

— *Did you understand his question?* — *No, I didn't.*

He had to pay a parking fine. — *Did he have to pay a parking fine?*

— *Yes, he did.*

They didn't have to stay after the party.

— *Did they have to stay after the party?* — *No, they didn't.*

1. Paul had a light breakfast in the morning.
2. All his friends started studying here half a year ago.
3. Max didn't have to wear a suit to work.
4. She knew his telephone number.
5. It was a cold winter day.
6. I felt tired and went to bed early.
7. Sally had to study hard last term.
8. The dog followed me all the way home.
9. Greg and his twin brother weren't very good at schoolwork.
10. Doris complained about the children/
11. The trip cost me a lot of money.
12. She didn't see anything strange in his remark.
13. Mr Hardy had to cancel the appointment.
14. We read their application forms before the interview.
15. They didn't have to study Spanish last year.
16. They told me about your problem.
17. The standard of education wasn't very high some year ago.
18. I didn't grow up in a village.
19. I ate a lot at the party last night.
20. His alarm clock didn't go off this morning.
21. I didn't enjoy Peter's birthday party.

**Exercise 17.** Complete the sentences with **was**, **were**, or **did**.

*Example:* A: Were you at the meeting the day before yesterday?

B: What meeting?

A: Did you forget about the meeting?

B: I guess so.

1. A: \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Finley in his office yesterday?  
B: Yes.

- A: \_\_\_\_\_ you see him about your problem?  
 B: Yes. He \_\_\_\_\_ very helpful.
2. Peggy \_\_\_\_\_ not in her office yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ not go to work.
3. A: Where \_\_\_\_\_ you last Sunday?  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ at the zoo with my children.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_ they enjoy it?  
 B: Yes, but the weather \_\_\_\_\_ very cold. Most of the animals \_\_\_\_\_ in their houses. It \_\_\_\_\_ too cold for them too. They \_\_\_\_\_ not want to be outside in the cold.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ not go to university yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ sick, so I stayed in bed the whole day.
5. A: I had a roommate last year. It \_\_\_\_\_ not work out.  
 B: Why?  
 A: He \_\_\_\_\_ difficult to live with. He never picked up his dirty clothes. He never washed his dirty dishes. I \_\_\_\_\_ glad when he moved out. I prefer living alone.
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you go to the bookshop yesterday?  
 B: Yes, I wanted to buy a good Russian—English dictionary.  
 A: \_\_\_\_\_ you buy it?  
 B: No, it \_\_\_\_\_ too expensive.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ not have to attend all the lectures. But the attendance of the seminars \_\_\_\_\_ compulsory.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ you have to pay a lot for that school?  
 B: Not a penny. It \_\_\_\_\_ a state school.

**Exercise 18.** Rewrite each sentence as positive, negative, or a general question, according to the instructions.

*Example:* My dad didn't work late yesterday. (Positive) — *My dad worked late yesterday.*

Greg went to the theatre at the weekend. (Question) — *Did Greg go to the theatre at the weekend?*

I had to visit my parents last week. (Negative) — *I didn't have to visit my parents last week.*

1. I didn't have to ask her to do the washing-up. (Positive)
2. Jim had a lot of adventures while hiking. (Question)
3. They had to invite investors to their annual meeting. (Negative)
4. Kate wasn't happy at school. (Positive)
5. This morning I ate nothing for breakfast. (Question)

6. We enjoyed yesterday's evening with them. (Negative)
7. That wasn't a mistake on my part. (Positive)
8. Jane had to quit her job last month. (Question)
9. Children skated over the frozen lake. (Negative)
10. We didn't find accommodation in the city centre. (Positive)
11. He took a cold shower and left for work. (Question)
12. He was good at maths. (Negative)
13. The sun didn't rise at 5 am. (Positive)
14. She had trouble with her back before she went to see a specialist. (Question)
15. We began a new course book in May. (Negative)
16. We didn't meet by chance at an office party. (Positive)
17. It was difficult to cut through the forest. (Question)
18. She had to work overtime in her new job. (Question)

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

1. <b>Did</b>	I	<b>arrive</b> late <b>or</b> early? –	You	<b>arrived</b> early.
	you		I	
	he/she/it		He/She/It	
	we		You	
	you		We	
	they		They	

2. <b>Did</b>	I	<b>have</b> breakfast at 7 <b>or</b> 8 o'clock? – At 8 o'clock.
	you	
	he/she	
	we	
	you	
	they	

**Did** | the room | **have** much **or** little space? – (It **had**) very little space.

<b>Did</b>	I	<u><b>have to pay</b></u> in cash <b>or</b> by credit card? – In cash.
	you	
	he/she	
	we	
	you	
	they	

3. **Was** he/she/it in France **or** Italy? – (He/She/It was) in Italy.  
**Were** you at work **or** at home? – (I was) at work.

<b>Were</b>	we you they	good <b>or</b> bad at school? – (We/You/They <b>were</b> ) rather good.
-------------	-------------------	---

**Exercise 19.** Ask alternative questions about the underlined words. Give answers.

*Example:* The bus/arrive/late/early? – *Did the bus arrive late or early? — (It arrived) late.*

Oliver/have to take a taxi/walk to work/yesterday morning? – *Did Olive have to take a taxi or did he walk to work yesterday morning? — He had to take a taxi.*

It/be/warm/cold/to sit in the open air? – *Was it warm or cold to sit in the open air? — (It was) cold.*

1. Pete/visit/his grandmother/yesterday/last Sunday?
2. They/have to stay in town /go to the country/last weekend?
3. Denis/attend the first lecture/miss it/yesterday?
4. Ben/walk to work/take a taxi?
5. Ann/study at Cambridge/at Oxford?
6. Max/have to invite/the whole group/only his close friends?
7. She/finish school/last year/two years ago?
8. Susan/pass/her driving test/fail it?
9. They/play football/volleyball/yesterday?
10. Mark/always/want/to be/a physicist/a biologist?
11. The buildings/in that street/be/all the same/different?
12. It/be/a typical/an unusual autumn day?
13. Sue and Ben/have to separate /years ago/only a few years ago?
14. Your old headmaster/be/very strict/kind?
15. Her sister/start/playing the piano/at the age of 5/a lot later?
16. You/have a cat/a dog/in your childhood?
17. He/get/his Bachelor's Degree/in Arts/in Science?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>When</b>	<b>were</b>	you born? – <i>In 1998.</i>
<b>How</b>	<b>was</b>	your weekend? – <i>Quite good.</i>
<b>Which subject</b>	<b>was</b>	your favourite? – <i>History.</i>

<b>How</b>	<b>did</b>	you	<b>get</b>	<i>there? – By bus.</i>
<b>How long</b>	<b>did</b>	it	<b>take</b>	<i>you to complete the task? – Three weeks.</i>
<b>How long ago</b>	<b>did</b>	it	<b>start</b>	<i>raining? – About an hour ago.</i>
<b>When</b>	<b>did</b>	you	<b>finish</b>	<i>school? – Last year.</i>
<b>What</b>	<b>did</b>	he	<b>do</b>	<i>after school? – He went to university.</i>
<b>Where</b>	<b>did</b>	she	<b>study</b>	<i>English? – At college.</i>
<b>Why</b>	<b>did</b>	you	<b>leave</b>	<i>the party so early? – I got bored.</i>
<b>How much</b>	<b>did</b>	it	<b>cost</b>	<i>you? – Not much.</i>
<b>How often</b>	<b>did</b>	she	<b>see</b>	<i>you last month? – Almost every other day.</i>
<b>Whose lecture</b>	<b>did</b>	you	<b>attend?</b>	<i>– Professor Brown's.</i>
<b>How</b>	<b>did</b>	he	<b>have to get</b>	<i>there? – On foot.</i>

### OBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<b>did</b>	she	<b>see</b>	<i>at the party? – Brian.</i>
<b>What</b>	<b>did</b>	they	<b>see</b>	<i>in London? – A lot of different sights.</i>

### SUBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	–	–	<b>helped</b>	<i>you? – My sister did.</i>
<b>What</b>	–	–	<b>happened</b>	<i>last night? – A car accident.</i>
<b>Who</b>	<b>was</b>	–	–	<i>at the party? – My friends.</i>

**Exercise 20.** Complete these conversations with *Past Simple*.

- What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) at the weekend?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a movie. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) *Blade Runner*.  
It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) awesome!
- How \_\_\_\_\_ (be) your weekend?  
— It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) great! I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) some friends on Saturday, and we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a concert.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) on Saturday night?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) friends over, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) dinner for them. Then we \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) a video. And what \_\_\_\_\_ (do) you do at the weekend?  
— Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home and \_\_\_\_\_ (study).
- What \_\_\_\_\_ you (do) on Sunday?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Oxford with my friends.  
We \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a tour of the city. Then we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) shopping.

**Exercise 21.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

*Example: Bobby played golf yesterday.* — What did Bobby do yesterday?

*They had to travel in a car.* — How did they have to travel?

1. Julia enjoyed *Barbara's* birthday party.
2. *Fred had to open the window* because it was hot and stuffy in the room.
3. A car accident happened *on Pine Avenue* yesterday.
4. When I was a child, I liked listening *to classical music*.
5. It took them *about a year* to get ready for the TOEFL test.
6. Amy studied at Harvard University *for four years*.
7. My parents were on holiday *in Greece* in June.
8. John had to stay *in Scotland* for ten years.
9. Old Mrs Parker worked in her tiny garden *every morning*.
10. Trent had to buy *a lot of* presents on his children's graduation day.
11. The choice of dishes was amazing. Celia preferred *a paella*.
12. Mrs Taylor's students often asked him *embarrassing* questions.
13. Brenda had to work flexitime *last week*.
14. It took Clare *an hour* to pack her suitcase.
15. *Charlotte Hughes* (the second oldest person in the world) didn't marry until sixty-three.
16. Alexander Bell started his first telephone company *on August 2nd, 1877*.
17. *My mother* gave me my love for music.
18. *No*, I didn't have any bad teachers at school.
19. It started snowing *an hour ago*.
20. Last year Kevin had *to sell his car*.
21. Alexander the Great conquered *half the world* before he was 33.
22. The farmer allowed us *to camp in this field*.
23. It took him *six years* to do a Bachelor's degree in biology.
24. Martin worked the whole summer. The job was tiring, but he earned *a lot of* money.
25. *Yes*, they had to move to the country two years ago.

**Exercise 22.** Ask subject or object questions. Give short answers to subject questions.

*Example: We waited for him at the door.*

*Who waited for him at the door? — We did.*

*Who did you wait for at the door?*

1. *Monica* listened to *the news* at breakfast.
2. *He* drove *his children* to school.
3. *We* had to carry *the child*.

4. *We* visited *Madeira* about five years ago.
5. *Anthony* talked to *his girlfriend* on the phone all evening.
6. *This farm* belonged to *my father* before me.
7. Yesterday evening *Emily* watched a *quiz show*.
8. *Ivy* had a baby yesterday.
9. *Fred's sister* married a *famous actor*.
10. *Ben* didn't speak to *the dean* yesterday.
11. *They* bought a present for *us*.
12. *The police* charged *him* with murder.
13. *Danny* was responsible for *that decision*.
14. *The officer* ordered *the men* to return to the barracks.
15. *The salesman* persuaded *me* to buy a new computer.
16. *She* tried to describe *the scene* to *her parents*, (two object question)

### TAG QUESTIONS

*I stayed* at home and watched TV, *didn't I?* — Yes, *you did.* / No, *you didn't.*  
 !!! You *had to buy* this TV on credit, *didn't you?* — Yes, *I did.* / No, / *I didn't.*  
*He won* the Cup Final, *didn't he?* — Yes, *he did.* / No, *he didn't.*  
*She drew* a map on the blackboard, *didn't she?* — Yes, *she did.* / No, *she didn't.*  
*It rained* cats and dogs yesterday, *didn't it?* — Yes, *it did.* / No, *it didn't.*  
*We camped* just under the summit, *didn't we?* — Yes, *you did.* / No, *you didn't.*  
*You began* to work on the project only yesterday, *didn't you?* — Yes, *we did.* / No, *we didn't.*  
*They looked* splendid in their national costumes, *didn't they?* — Yes, *they did.* / No, *they didn't.*

*I didn't* get bored at the opera, *did I?* — No, *you didn't.* / Yes, *you did.*  
*You didn't* have a firm in Glasgow, *did you?* — No, *I didn't.* / Yes, *I did.*  
*He didn't have to read* the article, *did he?* — No, *he didn't.* / Yes, *he did.*  
*She didn't* catch what you said, *did she?* — No, *she didn't.* / Yes, *she did.*  
*It didn't* do much damage to the car, *did it?* — No, *it didn't.* / Yes, *it did.*  
*We didn't give* a dance party for our daughter's birthday, *did we?* — No, *you didn't.* / Yes, *you did.*  
*You didn't* lie to the court, *did you?* — No, *we didn't.* / Yes, *we did.*  
*They didn't* attend the lecture, *did they?* — No, *they didn't.* / Yes, *they did.*

*I was* at the station in time, *wasn't I?* — Yes, *you were.* / No, *you weren't.*  
*You were* happy to see me, *weren't you?* — Yes, *I was.* / No, *I wasn't.*  
*He was* there for three weeks, *wasn't he?* — Yes, *he was.* / No, *he wasn't.*

*She was* on holiday, *wasn't she?* — Yes, *she was.* / No, *she wasn't.*  
*It was* terrific, *wasn't it?* — Yes, *it was.* / No, *it wasn't.*  
*We were* away for a week, *weren't we?* — Yes, *you were.* / No, *you weren't.*  
*You were* born in Moscow, *weren't you?* — Yes, *we were.* / No, *we weren't.*  
*They were* dressed in black, *weren't they?* — Yes, *they were.* / No, *they weren't.*

*I wasn't* late for the class, *was I?* — No, *you weren't.* / Yes, *you were.*  
*You weren't* at home last night, *were you?* — No, *I wasn't.* / Yes, *I was.*  
*He wasn't* a bright student, *was he?* — No, *he wasn't.* / Yes, *he was.*  
*She wasn't* a good housewife, *was she?* — No, *she wasn't.* / Yes, *she was.*  
*It wasn't* an inspiring job, *was it?* — No, *it wasn't.* / Yes, *it was.*  
*We weren't* too bored at the party, *were we?* — No, *you weren't.* / Yes, *you were.*  
*You weren't* in the office last Friday, *were you?* — No, *we weren't.* / Yes, *we were.*  
*They weren't* interested in the project, *were they?* — No, *they weren't.* / Yes, *they were.*

**Exercise 23.** Give the correct tag to these sentences.

- Pete missed the bus yesterday morning, \_\_\_\_\_?
- You didn't have a cup of coffee this morning, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Your brother did a chemistry degree, \_\_\_\_\_?
- The Titanic* was a large passenger liner, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Bob finished his homework around midnight, \_\_\_\_\_?
- She was born in Guildford, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Laura didn't eat any sweets at the party, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Emily's husband didn't have to drive her to work yesterday \_\_\_\_\_?
- Olga studied English in high school, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Your daughter started college last October, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They didn't have to go out of town last Saturday, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Monica wore a pink blouse which went very well with her black skirt, \_\_\_\_\_?
- You had to live at home with your parents two years ago, \_\_\_\_\_?
- He didn't look smart in his new suit, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They were in Verona two years ago, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They arrived in the city a fortnight ago, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Mr Brown didn't run a travel business in the Far East \_\_\_\_\_?
- His delay was due to heavy traffic, \_\_\_\_\_?
- A few years ago there were very few exchange programmes \_\_\_\_\_?
- Alice passed all her final exams with top grades, \_\_\_\_\_?
- We were very pleased to receive a letter from them, \_\_\_\_\_?



22. Early motorcars were not very comfortable, \_\_\_\_\_?
23. The sun shone brightly all day yesterday, \_\_\_\_\_?
24. They had awful weather while they were on holiday, \_\_\_\_\_?
25. They didn't go to the museum, \_\_\_\_\_?
26. He didn't have to attend all lectures, \_\_\_\_\_?

### USED TO/WOULD

Used to + Infinitive	Would + Infinitive
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• refers to a past habit or state in contrast to what happens now</li> </ul> <p><i>They <b>used to travel</b> abroad every summer, but now they can't afford it.</i></p> <p><i>I <b>used to dislike</b> Jane Benson, but now I think she's quite a nice girl.</i></p> <p><i>There <b>used to be</b> five cinemas in the town. Now there are only two.</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Negative form: Jane <b>didn't use</b> to have long hair when she was younger.</li> <li>• Question form: — <b>Did</b> you <b>use</b> to travel a lot? —Yes, <b>I did</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• refers to a repeated action or a typical behaviour in past time in a context already established by a verb in Past Simple or <b>used to</b></li> </ul> <p><i>When I was a boy we always <b>spent/used to spend</b> our holidays on a farm. We <b>would</b> get up at 6 and we'd help milk the cows. Then we'd return to the kitchen for breakfast</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Negative form and questions with <b>would</b> are not very common.</li> </ul>

**Exercise 24.** Rewrite the following sentences as positive, negative, or a general question according to the instructions.

*Example: a. My family used to live on the outskirts of the city. (Negative)*  
*My family **didn't use** to live on the outskirts of the city.*

b. People didn't use to think that the earth was flat. (Positive) *People **used** to think that the earth was flat.*

c. She used to go on holiday every June. (Question)  
*Did she **use** to go to a really very good school?*

1. We used to go to the same place for our holidays every year. (Negative)
2. He didn't use to have much money. (Positive)
3. Kevin used to gamble a lot before he went to prison. (Question)
4. They used to do everything together. (Negative)

5. When I was a boy, we didn't use to go camping at weekends. (Positive)
6. I used to go out very often when I was in high school. (Question)
7. I used to get up early when I was on holiday. (Negative)
8. My mum didn't use to wear mini-skirts when she was young. (Positive)
9. Kate used to be very slim when he was young. (Question)
10. James used to like swimming when he was a school. (Negative)
11. He didn't use to live in London. (Positive)
12. Simon used to spend hours just walking in the park. (Question)

**Exercise 25.** Make sentences with **used to** and **didn't use to** about how people lived hundreds of years ago.

1. travel/horse;
2. cook/wood fires;
3. live so long;
4. fight/spears;
5. hunt/bows and arrows;
6. believe/ghosts and devils;
7. have/bigger families;
8. children/work;
9. live/caves.

**Exercise 26.** Ask special questions about the information in *italics*.

*Example:* I used to go to work *every other week*. — How often did you use to go to work?

1. We used to live *in the village in the South of Scotland*.
2. Clare used to visit *her grandmother* every Sunday afternoon.
3. Years ago I used to have *a motorbike*.
4. *Mary* used to work in a small hospital in Brighton.
5. Everybody used to dislike Sharon *because she was too arrogant*.
6. My father used *to work for a large firm* before he retired.
7. She used to smoke *a lot* before she fell seriously ill.
8. Sam used to be interested in *football*.
9. France used to be a *monarchy*.
10. He didn't use to be keen on *sports* some years ago.
11. When Tom was young, he used to *go running* every morning.
12. When I was little, I used to be afraid of *the dark*.

**Exercise 27.** Give the correct tag to these sentences. Give short answers.

*Example:* We used to discuss politics till late at night, *didn't we?* — *Yes, we did.*

They didn't use to eat out in their youth, *did they?* — *No, they didn't.*

1. Sally used to go dancing a lot before she married, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. That shop used to be a grocer's a few years ago, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. When Andrew was a small boy, he didn't use to cry much, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. I used to like History when I was at school, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. When he was little, he used to be too naughty, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Your father didn't use to wear a beard, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Sarah didn't use to like Madonna, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. You used to catch the same train every morning, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. He didn't use to spend his days off in the country, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. We didn't use to skip classes when we were schoolchildren, \_\_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 28.** Complete the sentences with the verbs provided below. Use **used to**.

disagree	be	enjoy	attend	smoke
work	have	collect	go out	take
dislike	go	live	relax	teach

1. Emily usually stays at home at weekends, but she \_\_\_\_\_ every Saturday.
2. Mr. Warner's new office is within fifteen minutes' drive from his house. It \_\_\_\_\_ him about an hour to get to work.
3. George gave up smoking two years ago. He \_\_\_\_\_ like a chimney.
4. They moved to a new flat in the centre last week. They \_\_\_\_\_ in the suburbs.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ my roommate, but now I realize he's a very nice and friendly person.
6. Hank \_\_\_\_\_ in pubs. Now he likes lying on his old sofa surfing the Internet.
7. When Arnold was a first year student, he \_\_\_\_\_ all the lectures.
8. Lora \_\_\_\_\_ in a secondary school. Now she gives lectures at Yale University.
9. They never liked each other. They \_\_\_\_\_ about everything.
10. When Mike was a teenager, he \_\_\_\_\_ toy cars.
11. I'm a taxi driver now. Before that, I \_\_\_\_\_ in a restaurant.

12. Robin \_\_\_\_\_ a member of the School Film Club.
13. We \_\_\_\_\_ for long walks in the country when my father was alive.
14. I never \_\_\_\_\_ Sundays, but I do now.

**Exercise 29.** Write these sentences. Put one verb into the correct form of **used to** and the other into Past Simple.

Example: *I (smoke), but I (give it up) last year.* — I used to smoke, but I gave it up last year.

*I (not/like) him, but then I (change) my mind.* — I didn't use to like him, but then I changed my mind.

1. He \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in London before he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) abroad.
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) a lorry before I \_\_\_\_\_ (start) this business.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (earn) a lot of money, but then I \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) my job.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Glasgow, but then she \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to Dublin.
5. I'm surprised that they \_\_\_\_\_ (join) the folk music club. They \_\_\_\_\_ (not/like) folk music.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a garden, but then we \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to a different house.
7. That old radio \_\_\_\_\_ (work) before I \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) it.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/travel) much before I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) this job.
9. She \_\_\_\_\_ (play) a lot of tennis before she \_\_\_\_\_ (break) her leg.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) for a firm as an interpreter before I \_\_\_\_\_ (become) a teacher.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) him every week, but then we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an argument.
12. She \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) a lot before she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) an accident.

**Exercise 30.** In some of these sentences you can use **used to** or **would** instead of Past Simple. Where possible, rewrite the sentences using **used to** or **would**.

*Example:* a. On Sundays when we were kids, our mother made us pancakes for breakfast.

— *On Sundays when we were kids, our mother used to/would make us pancakes for breakfast.*

b. I played hockey twice a week that year. — *I used to play hockey twice a week that year.*

c. Anita *made* custard for breakfast yesterday morning.— *No change.*

1. When I was a child, we visited my grandmother every Sunday. The whole family put on their best clothes, and we walked to her house.
2. When we were kids, we played Cowboys and Indians together.
3. There was an unpleasant incident on the train this morning when a drunk attacked one of the passengers.
4. When Doris was a child, her parents lived in Spain.
5. Whenever the train was late, all the passengers complained.
6. When I was a child, my elder brother took me to the cinema every Saturday morning.
7. Whenever I visited my aunt Sarah, she gave me sweets.
8. Some years ago Denis often borrowed money from other people. Now that he is rich, he hardly ever lends anyone a penny!
9. We lived by a lake, and sometimes Dad took us fishing.
10. I took up tennis at the age of 11.
11. She was a nice girl, but she looked at herself in the mirror every minute.
12. From the time he was very young, Greg spent all his spare time collecting birds, animals, and insects of all kinds. Every morning he got up early and went first to the beach. There he caught small crabs and sometimes small fishes, which he put into a large jar and took home with him. On the way, he always went to a fisherman's cottage where he was often lucky enough to find some unusual insects.
13. As children, they spent a lot of time outdoors.
14. Peter went to a co-educational grammar school, but he didn't enjoy it very much because he wasn't very good at school work.
15. During their voyage across the Pacific, they took several pictures of great seabirds.
16. The government spent more money on higher education than they do now.
17. The first time I ever drove a car, I parked in a wrong place.
18. Frank's brother is a successful businessman. But it's a longtime since he had a holiday.
19. This magnificent old mansion belonged to some nobleman. It's a museum now.

20. Niki Taylor signed her first contract with a cosmetics company at the age of 14.
21. When Dick was a boy, he enjoyed looking at his mother's old photo album.
22. Before I decided to keep to a diet, I ate a lot.
23. I didn't like getting up early when I was very young. And I still don't like it.
24. She was an employee at the post office before she started her own business.
25. Years ago there were strict penalties for misbehaviour in some British schools.
26. There was a victory march down the Grand Avenue.

**Exercise 31.** Complete the paragraph by putting the verbs in brackets into the most suitable form (**would, used to** or Past Simple). Use **would** where possible. Where it is not possible, decide whether **used to** or Past Simple is most appropriate.

I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to a Crimean seaside resort every summer with my parents when I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a child. We \_\_\_\_\_ (choose) somewhere different from one year to the next. Every year my parents \_\_\_\_\_ (get out) the map of the Crimea and \_\_\_\_\_ (study) the coastline, trying to discover somewhere new; they always \_\_\_\_\_ (argue) at first because my mother \_\_\_\_\_ (suggest) a quiet little village, but my father \_\_\_\_\_ (not like) the idea.

In those days, before television sets \_\_\_\_\_ (become) common, there \_\_\_\_\_ (be) music halls in most cities and shows in all the big seaside resorts in summer. My father \_\_\_\_\_ (be) fond of the music hall, and on holiday he \_\_\_\_\_ (like) to see all the shows. When we first \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in a resort, he immediately \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) the local newspaper and \_\_\_\_\_ (book) seats for all the entertainments. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ (know) how much my father \_\_\_\_\_ (love) these shows, and almost never \_\_\_\_\_ (argue) with him.

**Exercise 32.** Think of 10 ways in which your life is different from your life 5 years ago. *Example: I used to go to school 5 years ago, but now I go to university.*

## Past continuous

### Usage:

- to talk about a **continuing** action at a certain time in the past  
*At ten o'clock last night I **was watching** TV.*  
*I saw you last night. You **were waiting** for a bus.*
- to talk about an **interrupted** action in the past  
 In this case, Past Continuous and Past Simple tenses are used together in a sentence to say that something happened in the middle of something else  
*I **was driving** along when suddenly a child **ran** across the road.*  
*While I **was doing** the ironing, I **burnt** my hand.*  
*(Just) as I was hanging out the washing, it **started** to rain.*
- to talk about actions in progress **at the same time**  
*While I was reading, Joan **was playing** the piano.*
- to talk about actions which happened **too often**  
*When I worked there, I **was always making** mistakes.*
- to describe the background history or environment when telling a story  
*It was a warm summer day. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.*

### NOTE:

Some verbs like, *understand, remember, etc.* are not used in the continuous form.

*I ~~was liking~~ the film. ⇨ I liked the film.*

## POSITIVE FORM

**was/were+ Participle I (verb + - ing)**

I	<b>was</b>	<b>reading</b> a book all evening.
You	<b>were</b>	<b>doing</b> a test at that time.
He/She/It	<b>was</b>	<b>working</b> at 10 o'clock yesterday morning.
We		<b>playing</b> tennis at 7 o'clock last night.
You	<b>were</b>	<b>having</b> dinner when I came.
They		<b>listening</b> to the opera last night.

**Exercise 32.** Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets in Past Continuous.

*Example: I was watching (watch) television when the phone rang.*

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) her car when suddenly she felt dizzy.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) to the radio when it suddenly stopped working.
3. When I got to the hospital, Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the waiting room.
4. When I saw them, they \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football.
5. The man \_\_\_\_\_ (get) into his car when the police arrived.
6. When I got out of the house, it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) into the house when I heard the noise.
8. Sam saw a shark when he \_\_\_\_\_ (swim) in the sea.
9. The children's clothes got dirty when they \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the attic.
10. He cut himself when he \_\_\_\_\_ (shave).
11. You broke your tooth when you \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) walnuts.
12. We \_\_\_\_\_ (tidy) up our flat for most of the morning.
13. While I \_\_\_\_\_ (serve) in the army, my elder brother got married.
14. It was 6 o'clock. The train the station \_\_\_\_\_ (approach).

**Exercise 33.** Match a line in A with a line in B. Begin with **as**, **when**, or **while**.

*Example: As/When/While Danis was talking to his boss, somebody stole his case.*

A	B
Danis was talking to his boss	somebody stole his case.
I was phoning my uncle	the television broke down.
I was putting a pie into the oven	somebody ran off with her clothes.
They were sleeping	there was a knock on the front door.
We were working in Brighton	I met Bob.
I was shopping in the supermarket	her hat blew off.
I was unlocking the car	the thieves broke in.
I was walking down the street	the electricity went off.
I was watching the news	somebody stole my purse.
We were having lunch	I lost my bag.
Dolly was swimming	I first met my wife.
I was cleaning the floor	I fell off my bicycle.
Fiona was running for the bus	the phone went dead.
I was turning a sharp corner	I dropped the key down a drain.
My mother was cooking dinner	I burnt my hand.
I was looking in a shop window	the dog knocked over the bucket of water.
She was making the beds	Jane and Sally got here.



## NEGATIVE FORM

<i>I / He / she / It</i>	<i>was not (wasn't)</i>	<i>Present Participle (Verb + -ing)</i>
<i>You / We / They</i>	<i>were not (weren't)</i>	

*I was not (wasn't) doing anything special last night.*

*You were not (weren't) working at that time yesterday afternoon.*

*It was not (wasn't) snowing heavily yesterday in the evening.*

*They were not (weren't) having breakfast when the doorbell rang.*

**Exercise 34.** Put the verbs in the Past Continuous tense in the negative form.

*Example:* I was walking home when it began to rain. – *I wasn't walking home when it began to rain.*

1. This time last year I was living in Spain.
2. Ann was doing something when I dropped in.
3. The phone rang when I was having a shower.
4. Sally took a photograph of me while I was eating a huge hamburger.
5. I saw Helen at the party. She was wearing glasses.
6. It was raining hard when I woke up in the morning.
7. He was driving at 100 kilometres an hour when an accident happened.
8. Don was playing tennis when he broke his leg.
9. We were staying with the Browns last summer.
10. Joan was playing the piano last night.
11. We were enjoying ourselves at the party last night.
12. My parents were gardening all weekend.

**Exercise 35.** Use Past Continuous in the sentences below.

*Example:* I wasn't listening (not/listen), so I missed what he said.  
It was (snow) heavily all day.

1. Just as I \_\_\_\_\_ (get) to an interesting part of the story, the telephone rang.
2. The taxi driver \_\_\_\_\_ (not/drive) fast enough, so Pat didn't catch the train.
3. When she was younger, she \_\_\_\_\_ (always play) jokes on other people.
4. While George \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) the ceiling, he fell off the ladder.
5. Yesterday in the afternoon I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/visit) my relatives.
6. While a friend of mine \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a holiday in Egypt, I \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) in Europe.

7. Mr and Mrs Dawson \_\_\_\_\_ (celebrate) their silver wedding anniversary yesterday. They both looked very happy.
8. Dina and Tom first met when they \_\_\_\_\_ (take) part in the competition.
9. Last year Frank \_\_\_\_\_ (not/attend) school. He was rather seriously ill.
10. My parents \_\_\_\_\_ (argue) about something when I walked into the room.
11. While Ted \_\_\_\_\_ (fix) his car yesterday, his wife brought him a glass of juice.
12. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ (not/listen) to the lecturer; he \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to his friends.

### GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b>Was</b>	I	waiting for you in the wrong place?—Yes, <i>you were</i> . /No, <i>you weren't</i> .
<b>Were</b>	you	reading when I phoned you? —Yes, <i>I was</i> ./No, <i>I wasn't</i> .
<b>Was</b>	he	staying at home yesterday? —Yes, <i>he was</i> ./No, <i>he wasn't</i> .
<b>Was</b>	she	wearing a fantastic dress at the party last night? —Yes, <i>she was</i> ./No, <i>she wasn't</i> .
<b>Was</b>	it	snowing all day? — Yes, <i>it was</i> ./No, <i>it wasn't</i> .
<b>Were</b>	we	having dinner at 7 o'clock? —Yes, <i>you were</i> ./No, <i>you weren't</i> .
<b>Were</b>	you	moving out when I phoned? —Yes, <i>we were</i> ./No, <i>we weren't</i> .
<b>Were</b>	they	flying over the Atlantic at 3 pm? —Yes, <i>they were</i> ./No, <i>they weren't</i> .

**Exercise 36.** Make these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*Example:* He was studying in the library at seven last night.

*Was he studying in the library at seven last night? — Yes, he was.*

He wasn't working overtime yesterday in the evening.

*Was he working overtime yesterday in the evening? — No, he wasn't.*

1. The babysitter was reading little Betty a fairy tale.
2. Rick was climbing the stairs when he fell down.
3. Angela was walking along the street when she heard footsteps behind her.
4. Nobody was talking when the teacher came in.
5. When Sue came downstairs, her television wasn't working.
6. When Mrs. Robinson entered the room, her children were fighting.
7. Charles wasn't driving very fast when the accident happened.
8. My mother was cooking dinner when I came home.
9. We weren't talking on the telephone for too long.
10. Irene was travelling in Africa when she got ill.

## ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

<b>Was</b>	I	<b>reading</b> a journal <b>or</b> a magazine? — <i>A magazine.</i>
<b>Were</b>	you	<b>talking</b> to the headmaster <b>or</b> to one of the teachers? — <i>To a teacher.</i>
<b>Was</b>	he/she/it	<b>growing</b> fast <b>or</b> slow? — <i>(Rather) fast.</i>
<b>Were</b>	we/you/they	<b>watching</b> a thriller or an action film? — <i>A thriller.</i>

**Exercise 37.** Ask alternative questions about the underlined information and give short answers.

*Example:* He (play) the flute/the saxophone when you came in?

*Was he playing the flute or the saxophone when you came in? — The saxophone.*

1. She (stay) with the Browns/one of her old school friends when she was there?
2. Jack (work) at home/in his office last night?
3. The farmer's wife (work) in the house/in the garden when she heard a scream?
4. You (talk) on the telephone/watch TV when the doorbell rang?
5. Carol (cross) the road/(wait) for the bus when she saw the accident?
6. Greg (wear) a tuxedo/casual clothes at the party?
7. Mike and his wife (buy) things/look at window displays when they were in the shopping centre?
8. They (have) dinner at home/in a restaurant?
9. Her parents (live) in the centre of Moscow/on the outskirts when she was a child?
10. George and his girlfriend (walk) in the park/(have) a snack in a cafe when it started to rain?

## SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>What</b>	<b>were</b>	you	<b>doing</b> at 7 o'clock yesterday? — <i>I was having dinner.</i>
<b>Where</b>	<b>was</b>	she	<b>waiting</b> for you at that time? — <i>At the bus stop.</i>
<b>Where</b>	<b>were</b>	you	<b>going</b> when I met you? — <i>To the theatre.</i>
<b>When</b>	<b>were</b>	they	<b>living</b> in Brazil? — <i>A couple of years ago.</i>
<b>Why</b>	<b>were</b>	you	<b>crying</b> when I saw you? — <i>My broken leg was hurting me</i>
<b>How fast</b>	<b>was</b>	he	<b>doing</b> an hour? — <i>I don't know, but he wasn't driving too fast.</i>
<b>How much</b>	<b>were</b>	you	<b>earning</b> for that job? — <i>Not very much.</i>

## OBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<b>were</b>	you	<b><i>waiting for</i></b> when I saw you? — ( <i>For</i> ) <i>my mother</i> :
<b>Whose lecture</b>	<b>were</b>	they	<b><i>listening to</i></b> when the principal came in? — <i>I don't know.</i>
<b>What</b>	<b>was</b>	she	<b><i>looking through</i></b> when the lesson started? — <i>Some documents.</i>

## SUBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<b>was</b>	—	<b><i>laying</i></b> the table when the guests arrived? — <i>My daughters (were).</i>
<b>What</b>	<b>was</b>	—	<b><i>going on</i></b> when I came in?— <i>Sally and another girl were arguing.</i>

**Exercise 38.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

*Example:* We were taking the exam in the lecture hall. Where were you taking the exam?

1. The children were doing *their homework* when the father came home.
2. I was looking *for some photos* when you rang.
3. They were doing 70 miles an hour *because they didn't want to be late for the train.*
4. We were watching *a documentary about the homeless* when the TV set stopped working.
5. He was walking down the road *one dusky Friday evening.*
6. *They* were selling tickets at six pounds each.
7. That year Charlie was earning *only twenty pounds a week* for his really hard job.
8. She was looking *fixedly* at a tall, elegantly dressed man with a moustache.
9. *Richard* was waiting outside the door as she emerged.
10. We were making every effort *to pass the end-of-term exams.*
11. *In the early seventies* women were wearing false eye lashes and wigs, as was the fashion.
12. *Peter* was working in his family business.
13. My grandfather *was serving in the army* when the war broke out.
14. Dave was working *in a restaurant* when I first met him.
15. *Joan's* husband was fixing the car when he saw a car crash.
16. We *were strolling into the town* when we came face to face with our neighbour.
17. *Yesterday after breakfast* she was swimming in the sea.
18. They were driving *home* when the police stopped them.

## TAG QUESTIONS

... *was /were* +**Part. I (V+ing)**, *wasn't/weren't* ...? — *Yes, / (No,) ... was(n't)/ were(n't)*

*You were cooking* dinner when the fire started, *weren't you?* — Yes, I was. / No, I wasn't.

*It was snowing* rather heavily last night, *wasn't it?*—Yes, it *was*. / No, it *wasn't*.

*You were arguing* when the phone rang, *weren't you?*—Yes, we *were*. /No, we *weren't*.

... *was(n't) /were(n't)* +**Part. I (V+ing)**, *was/were* ...? — *Yes, / (No,) ... was(n't)/were(n't)*

*I wasn't working* overtime on Friday, *was /?*—No, you *weren't*. / Yes, you *were*.

*We weren't having* a party last weekend, *were we?*—No, you *weren't*. / Yes, you *were*.

*They weren't sitting* the exam at 3 pm., *were they?*—No, they *weren't*. / Yes, they *were*.

**Exercise 39.** Give the correct tag to these sentences.

1. He was saving his energy for the next week's race in Belgium, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. The entire family was waiting for her to speak, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. She wasn't setting an evil example for her children, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. The baby was crying as she woke up in the middle of the night, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Tonya was standing there in her light brown coat, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Nobody was waiting for me when my train arrived at the station, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Your parents were giving you love and emotional support, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Pamela was doing nothing all weekend, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. Ted wasn't travelling in Europe in July, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. The child was sitting on the floor when you came into the room, \_\_\_\_\_?
11. When I last saw Ann, she was trying to find a job, \_\_\_\_\_?
12. She wasn't feeling well when she got up in the morning, \_\_\_\_\_?
13. Everybody was shouting when the headmistress emerged, \_\_\_\_\_?
14. They weren't enjoying themselves at that boring party, \_\_\_\_\_?
15. Everything was going to be just fine, \_\_\_\_\_?

## PAST CONTINUOUS VS PAST SIMPLE

Past Continuous	Past Simple
<p>1. We use it for <u>an incomplete or continuing action in the past</u></p> <p><i>The doctors were looking for a cure.</i> (an incomplete action)</p> <p><i>I was cleaning my apartment for most of the morning.</i> ( a continuing action)</p>	<p>1. We use it for <u>a single and complete action in the past</u></p> <p><i>Alison took the newspapers from Andy and walked out of the shop.</i> (a single action)</p> <p><i>He set his alarm clock for quarter to seven.</i> (a complete action)</p>
<p>2. We use it for <u>an interrupted action in the past</u></p> <p><i>When Sue came home, Dick was making some tea.</i> (Dick was in the middle of making some tea. Then Sue came home.)</p>	<p>2. We use it to say that <u>one thing happened</u></p> <p><i>When Sue came home, Dick made some tea.</i> (Sue came home. Then Dick made some tea.)</p>
<p>3. We use it for <u>repeated actions in the past</u> with, e.g., <i>always</i></p> <p><i>She was always criticizing people.</i></p>	<p>3. We use it to talk about <u>past habits or regular actions in the past</u></p> <p><i>Albert used to work on his grandparents' farm in his schooldays.</i></p>
<p>4. We use it <u>to describe a background scene</u></p> <p><i>I was standing outside the bank. It was getting dark and I was feeling tired. I was waiting for a woman called Joan Smith.</i></p>	<p>4. We use it <u>to describe past events and actions</u></p> <p><i>Suddenly, a woman came round the corner and walked right up to me. «Are you Steve Berlin?» she asked.</i></p>
<p>5. -----</p>	<p>5. We also use it with verbs not used <u>in the continuous tense</u></p> <p><i>Nobody knew Jack Kennedy completely. Steve was a fortunate man. J always wanted to be an athlete.</i></p>

**Exercise 40.** Complete the sentences with Past Continuous or Past Simple.

*Example:* We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner when a friend of ours  
\_\_\_\_\_ (arrive). *We were having dinner when a friend of ours arrived.*

1. While Captain Cook \_\_\_\_\_ (explore) the Eastern Pacific Ocean, he  
\_\_\_\_\_ (discover) Antarctica.
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the lottery and \_\_\_\_\_ (share) the prize money.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) out of the window and \_\_\_\_\_ (see) that we  
\_\_\_\_\_ (fly) over the ocean.
4. Betty \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to see how her child \_\_\_\_\_ (be) and found  
he \_\_\_\_\_ (cry).
5. Arthur \_\_\_\_\_ (break) his leg while he \_\_\_\_\_ (play) football.
6. He \_\_\_\_\_ (tell) me he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a bad time with his wife.
7. Roy \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Alice and Tina when he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to work  
this morning. They \_\_\_\_\_ (shop).
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ (still/work) when I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave).
9. While I \_\_\_\_\_ (read), Jenny \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the piano.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (break) a cup last night. I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the washing-up  
when it \_\_\_\_\_ (slip) out of my hand.
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/go) out because it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain).
12. Nick \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) off the ladder while he \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) the ceiling.
13. She \_\_\_\_\_ (take) her degree at York two years ago.
14. Sally always \_\_\_\_\_ (look) as if she \_\_\_\_\_ (enjoy) herself.
15. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) midnight. She \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) home.
16. The Industrial Revolution \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) in the 18th century.
17. He \_\_\_\_\_ (know) what he \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to do from the age of 14.
18. Thomas \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in a little fenced area full of sand while his  
mother \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on the bench and \_\_\_\_\_ (read) a book.
19. I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a pizza for lunch.
20. We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the party when the police \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive).
21. They \_\_\_\_\_ (thank) the man when he \_\_\_\_\_ (give) them the  
money.
22. When the manager \_\_\_\_\_ (come), they \_\_\_\_\_ just (say) hello  
and (continue) their work.
23. He \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a fiery temper and \_\_\_\_\_ (like) to get his own  
way.
24. He \_\_\_\_\_ (gain) a first class Honours degree in economics.

25. She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the kitchen and \_\_\_\_\_ (make) herself a cup of coffee.
26. Steve \_\_\_\_\_ (write) to his father from time to time, but it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) out of sense of duty rather than love.

**Exercise 41.** Complete each sentence with **when** and **while**.

*Example:* Robin was climbing a mountain when he slipped and fell.

*While* Victor was riding his motorcycle, he witnessed a terrible car accident.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ we were driving in the storm, we had to stop and clear the snow off the car.
2. The plane crashed \_\_\_\_\_ it left the runway.
3. My sister and I were studying \_\_\_\_\_ our parents were watching TV.
4. Paul was playing the guitar \_\_\_\_\_ some of his friends came to see him.
5. I left school \_\_\_\_\_ I was 17.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ she pressed the button, the lift stopped.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Diana went back to college, she told everybody that she was engaged.
8. Last night I was reading in bed \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly I heard a scream.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ we lived in the town, we often went to the theatre.
- 10 We were going down in the lift \_\_\_\_\_ suddenly it stopped.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ the doorbell rang, I got up and answered it.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ she entered the room, she saw the fire.

**Exercise 42.** Make sentences. Put the verbs into the correct form: Past Continuous or Past Simple.

*Example:* while I/write/a letter/the phone/ring.

*While I was writing a letter, the phone rang.*

*you/read/the newspaper/as soon as it/arrive?*

*Did you read the newspaper as soon as it arrived?*

1. I/break/my leg/when I/trip/over the dog.
2. the jumper/shrink/when I/wash/it.
3. she/not/lock/the door/when she/leave/the office.
- 5 he train/go/through the tunnel/when it/suddenly/stop.
6. Sally/wash/her hair/when the doorbell/ring.
7. they/cry/when they/hear/the bad news.
8. the cat/lie/on the sofa/when the dog/come/into the room.



9. you/fix/your bike/when you/hurt/yourself?
10. the bomb/explode/as people/go/to lunch.
11. Henry/walk/along the street/when the earthquake/hit?

**Exercise 43.** Complete the paragraphs using Past Continuous or Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

- A. A wood fire \_\_\_\_\_ (burn) in the fireplace, and the cat \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) in front of it. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the piano and \_\_\_\_\_ (sing) softly to herself. Suddenly there was a knock on the door. The girl \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) playing. The cat \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) up.
- B. I \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the big chair in Roy's barber's shop at the time. Roy \_\_\_\_\_ (cut) my hair with his big scissors when he \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) the sound of horses outside. The noise was so loud that we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) over to the window to have a look. Through the window we could see at least ten gunmen. They \_\_\_\_\_ (ride) into town. Roy immediately \_\_\_\_\_ (go) over to his desk and \_\_\_\_\_ (put) on his gun and Sheriff's badge.
- C. It was a typical summer afternoon: the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (shine), the cars \_\_\_\_\_ (creep) slowly round the corner of the park. Four or five children \_\_\_\_\_ (play) in the stream by the fountain. All the world \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) shorts and T-shirts, or swimming-costumes: yet Eric \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on a park bench in his overcoat. He \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) cold and lonely. «Where will it all end?» he \_\_\_\_\_ (think), as he \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at the children. After a few minutes, he \_\_\_\_\_ (get) up and \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) through the park gates.
- D. Jim \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) just before he \_\_\_\_\_ (put) his key in the front door. Something \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) in the back garden. Quietly, he \_\_\_\_\_ (creep) around the side of the house and \_\_\_\_\_ (look) through the gate. Two men \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) at the back of the house, holding a ladder. A third man \_\_\_\_\_ (be) at the top of the ladder, and a fourth inside the house: he \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) furniture through the window to his partner, who \_\_\_\_\_ (give) it to his friends below. All four \_\_\_\_\_ (work) quietly and efficiently, and the pile of furniture in the garden \_\_\_\_\_ (get) bigger and bigger. Jim couldn't believe his eyes: the team of strangers \_\_\_\_\_ (empty) the entire house, and they \_\_\_\_\_ (behave) as if this was the most normal thing in the world! He \_\_\_\_\_ (cough) loudly, and then \_\_\_\_\_ (say) "Excuse me!"— and the man at the top of the ladder \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) his portable TV.

**Exercise 44.** Put in the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use either Past Continuous or Past Simple.

Thomas Edison \_\_\_\_\_ (start) work on the railway when he was twelve. He sold newspapers and snacks. There were long periods with nothing for him to do, so he \_\_\_\_\_ (build) himself a little laboratory in the luggage van where he could carry out experiments when he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/sell) things to the passengers. Another way that he \_\_\_\_\_ (occupy) himself was by reading. He \_\_\_\_\_ (join) a library and \_\_\_\_\_ (read) every single book in it. One day, when he \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) at a station he \_\_\_\_\_ (notice) a small boy who \_\_\_\_\_ (play) by the track, unaware that a train \_\_\_\_\_ (approach). Edison \_\_\_\_\_ (run) out and \_\_\_\_\_ (grab) the child just in time. The child's father \_\_\_\_\_ (be) so grateful that he \_\_\_\_\_ (offer) to teach Edison to be a telegraph operator. Edison \_\_\_\_\_ (accept) the offer and soon he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) regular lessons. After a year, he \_\_\_\_\_ (be) good enough to get a job in the telegraph office. He \_\_\_\_\_ (continue) to read and experiment, whenever he \_\_\_\_\_ (have) time. At twenty-one he \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the telegraph office and devoted all his time to being an inventor. He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) on to invent the electric light bulb, the phonograph and the movie camera.

**Exercise 45.** Choose the correct form of the verbs in the following stories.

- A. When I was a boy, I *wanted/used to want* to be a musician. I *used to play/would play* the drums. I *was practising/would practise* for hours every evening. I *went /used to go* to my local jazz club every week to listen. The Rollers *played/were playing* there. Unfortunately, their drummer *would fall ill/fell ill* so he couldn't play. They *were asking/asked* me to take his place, and, of course, I *used to agree/agreed*. It was awful. After that, I still *went/used to go* to the club, but I *would never offer/never offered* to play again, and they certainly *didn't use to ask/didn't ask* me.
- B. People sometimes say that there's nothing new in the world of fashion. Gloria was a well-known model during the seventies. When her children were in their early teens they *were enjoying/used to enjoy* looking at her old photo albums. They *were finding/found* it hard to believe that she *was wearing/used to wear* such strange clothes. *Did people really use to think/Were people really thinking* flared trousers looked good? And those ugly platform shoes! She *was admitting/admitted* that people *were often falling over/often used to fall over* because the heels were so high. In the early nineties, however, Gloria *would notice/ noticed* to her amusement that the styles of the seventies *were/used to be* in fashion

again. «I *planned/was planning* to throw all my old clothes away,» she said, «but my daughter *used to go/went* to a party last week, and guess what she *wore/was wearing*—that's right, some of my old clothes!»

### PRESENT SIMPLE/PRESENT CONTINUOUS/PAST SIMPLE/PAST CONTINUOUS

**Exercise 46.** Complete the conversations. Put the verb in brackets in the correct form.

*Example:* Terry: Were you going (go) shopping when I saw you yesterday morning?

Joice: No, I was (be) on my way to the bank.

Terry: I go (go) to the bank every Friday, before the weekend.

Joice: Me, too, usually. But this week I didn't have (not/have) time, so I went (go) yesterday.

A. Mum: Oh no! My favourite cup. What \_\_\_\_\_ (happen)?

Kitty: I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) sorry, Mum. I \_\_\_\_\_ (break) it when I \_\_\_\_\_ (wash) it.

Mum: How?

Kitty: My hands \_\_\_\_\_ (be) wet, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) it on the floor

B. Clark: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) that science programme on TV last night?

Barry: No, I never \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV.

Clark: It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) wonderful. It \_\_\_\_\_ (show) a new way of repairing a heart.

Barry: Oh.

C. Jessica: Why \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at me?

David: Because you \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a new dress and you \_\_\_\_\_ (look) very good in it.

Jessica: Thank you. I \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) it yesterday.

D. Dan: What \_\_\_\_\_ Nancy \_\_\_\_\_ (do) this morning?

Bob: She's at the doctor's at the moment.

Dan: Oh dear. What \_\_\_\_\_ (happen)?

Bob: She \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) and \_\_\_\_\_ (hurt) her leg yesterday when she \_\_\_\_\_ (run) for a bus.

E. Alice: \_\_\_\_\_ Eddie \_\_\_\_\_ (work) at half past six last night?

Tina: No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (help) me with the dinner. He often \_\_\_\_\_ (help) in the kitchen.

- Alice: When \_\_\_\_\_ he \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out?  
 Tina: He didn't. He \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home all evening.  
 F. Joan: I \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) you at 10 o'clock yesterday evening but you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) at home.  
 Hank: 10 o'clock? I \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in a bar. I \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) beer.  
 Joan: \_\_\_\_\_ Dana with you?  
 Hank: No, she \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the library.  
 Joan: Where \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) after the bar?  
 Hank: I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home.

## ARTICLES

Zero Article	(In)definite Article
<p>We do not use an article with <b>bed, church, class, college, court, hospital, prison, school, university</b> when these places are visited or used for their primary purpose</p> <p>We go:        to ___ bed / church / court / hospital / prison / school / college / university  <i>I think I'll go to ___ bed early tonight.</i>  <i>My grandmother always goes to ___ church on Sunday.</i>  <i>Maria goes to ___ school every day.</i>  <i>Mr Woods went to ___ hospital a week ago.</i></p> <p>We can be:        in ___ bed (sleeping or resting)        at ___ church (as worshippers)        in ___ class (as pupils, students)        in ___ court (as witnesses, etc.)        in ___ hospital (as patients)        in ___ prison (as criminals)        at ___ school/college/university (as pupils, students)  <i>Susan's in ___ class at the moment.</i>  <i>I studied history at ___ university.</i>  <i>Sam is in ___ prison for something he didn't do. He was very naughty at ___ school.</i></p>	<p>We use 'the' or 'a' with <b>bed, church, class, college, court, hospital, prison, school, university</b> when these places are visited or used for other purposes</p> <p><i>Your shoes are under <b>the</b> bed.</i>  <i>We've got <b>a</b> fine new hospital.</i>  <i>He sometimes goes to <b>the</b> prison to give lectures.</i>  <i>We took some photos outside <b>the</b> church.</i></p>

**Exercise 47.** Complete the following sentences with *the*, *a(n)*, or *zero* article.

1. When do you hope to go to \_\_\_\_\_ university?
2. I'm really very tired and I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
3. The 28-year-old striker was in \_\_\_\_\_ court last week for breaking a rival player's jaw.
4. How long will she be in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital?
5. Yesterday we bought \_\_\_\_\_ lovely new bed.
6. Eton is \_\_\_\_\_ very good school.
7. There's a strike in \_\_\_\_\_ hospital.
8. He left \_\_\_\_\_ school and went to \_\_\_\_\_ university.
9. Yesterday my father came to \_\_\_\_\_ school to see the headmaster.
10. Jack's friends go to \_\_\_\_\_ hospital to see him every Saturday.
11. The stranger asked me the way to \_\_\_\_\_ church.
12. They sent the thief to \_\_\_\_\_ prison for six months.
13. He's doing a Bachelor's Degree at \_\_\_\_\_ university.
14. I go to \_\_\_\_\_ church every Sunday. I saw Mrs Smith while I was in \_\_\_\_\_ church.
15. There's a lot of reading in \_\_\_\_\_ class.

**Exercise 48.** Complete the following sentences with *'the'*, *'a/an'* or *zero* article.

1. I saw \_\_\_\_\_ very good film on TV last night.
2. I asked my father for \_\_\_\_\_ advice about finding \_\_\_\_\_ job.
3. I took \_\_\_\_\_ kids for \_\_\_\_\_ picnic in \_\_\_\_\_ park after \_\_\_\_\_ school.
4. My brother works in \_\_\_\_\_ garage in \_\_\_\_\_ Brighton. He's \_\_\_\_\_ engineer.
5. Did you enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ party you went to on \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday?
6. I had \_\_\_\_\_ cup of coffee and some toast for \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast this morning. \_\_\_\_\_ coffee was delicious.
7. Stella is at \_\_\_\_\_ art school. She is training to be \_\_\_\_\_ fashion designer.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ cheese and drank \_\_\_\_\_ wine.
9. Can you see those three men? They're \_\_\_\_\_ policemen.
10. These are \_\_\_\_\_ I bought last week.
11. Could you pass \_\_\_\_\_ milk, please?
12. Do you take \_\_\_\_\_ suger in \_\_\_\_\_ tea?
13. Andrew hates \_\_\_\_\_ examinations.
14. I like \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ rain.

15. \_\_\_\_\_ young should listen to \_\_\_\_\_ old.
16. Chopin wrote \_\_\_\_\_ lot of music for \_\_\_\_\_ piano.
17. I went to \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 o'clock last night.
18. I studied \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ university.
19. Did you go to \_\_\_\_\_ by \_\_\_\_\_ bus or on \_\_\_\_\_ foot yesterday?
20. They released Mr Mandela from \_\_\_\_\_ in 1990.
21. \_\_\_\_\_ Soviet Union was \_\_\_\_\_ biggest country in \_\_\_\_\_ world.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ weather was lovely when I wrote up yesterday moening;  
\_\_\_\_\_ sun was shining, and there was \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful blue sky.
23. Roy is now at \_\_\_\_\_ London University.
24. I was lying on \_\_\_\_\_ bead reading \_\_\_\_\_ book.
25. Who was \_\_\_\_\_ woman you were talking to just now.
26. Queen Elizabeth Hospital is \_\_\_\_\_ children's gospital with 120 beds.
27. Are you interested in \_\_\_\_\_ politics?
28. Quite \_\_\_\_\_ few children are absent from \_\_\_\_\_ class once  
\_\_\_\_\_ week without any acceptable reason.
29. \_\_\_\_\_ Nightrider is \_\_\_\_\_ name given to express trains running  
nightly without \_\_\_\_\_ sleeping cars. One goes from \_\_\_\_\_ Lon-  
don to \_\_\_\_\_ Glasgow and \_\_\_\_\_ other from \_\_\_\_\_ London to  
\_\_\_\_\_ Aberdeen.
30. He is now \_\_\_\_\_ student of \_\_\_\_\_ economics at \_\_\_\_\_ West-  
ern New England College in \_\_\_\_\_ Springfield.

## GRAMMAR IN CONTEXT

**Exercise 49.** Answer the following questions.

1. Where did you live before you came here?
2. What were you like as a child?
3. What sort of character did you have as a child?
4. What were your childhood dreams and ambitions?
5. What did you want to be when you grew up?
6. Did you have any pipe dreams? What was your parents' attitude?
7. What kind of school did you attend?
8. Which subjects did you have to study?
9. Which subject(s) did you like most?
10. Which did you like the least?
11. Which three subjects are most useful, in your opinion, for someone who wants to be:

an architect;	a teacher;
a businessman/woman;	a politician;
a doctor;	an engineer;
a lawyer;	a journalist?

12. What was discipline like at your school?
13. Did you play truant when you were at school?
14. What did you enjoy most about school?
15. What didn't you like about school?
16. What was your first day at university like?
17. Your university life is quite different from your school life, isn't it?
18. Did you have to change your lifestyle? If so, in what way?

**Exercise 50.** In groups, tell each other about your school days.

1. Which subjects did you like the least? Why? Which subjects were your favourite ones? Why?
2. Summarise the findings of your group survey so that you can report to the class. Find out:
  - 1) the most popular subject;
  - 2) the least popular.
  - 3) the most common reasons why people dislike certain subjects.

**Exercise 51.** Discuss and plan "the ideal school".

*Take into consideration the following points:* What new subject(s) will you introduce? Which subjects will you drop? Why?

How will the school be run — rules, pupil power, in classrooms or outdoors? How much influence will parents have in running the school?

Astronomy	Mathematics
Biology	Music
Business Administration	Native Language
Chemistry	Philosophy
Composition	Psychology
Drama	Religion
Economics	Rhetoric
Engineering	Sociology
Environmental studies	Statistics
Foreign languages	Zoology
Geography	Linguistics
Literature	Geology
History	Journalism

**Exercise 52.** The Vice-Chancellor of your university is very upset by recent studies which show that the average graduate from his university is less competent than the average graduate of 40 or 50 years ago.

As a result, he wants to change the entire educational approach. The students of his university have to take three years of «core» courses besides some optional ones. Only during their senior year they may take electives in their major.

The core courses must be designed to «give the students a broad background in the general humanities and sciences with the result that the students possess analytical skills and written and verbal ability necessary to be a leader in society».

## TEST YOURSELF (UNIT 2)

**#1** There are some mistakes in each of the following sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. The footballer ran towards the goal when he fell over.
2. James Dean drove a sports car when he was dying.
3. Elvis Presley dyed suddenly in early middle age.
4. I bought some food and drank.
5. The building is now a department store. It didn't use to be a cinema.
6. He neglected his studies before he didn't use to fail most of his 13 end-of-term tests.
7. While Kathy's elder brother served in the army, she got married.

**#2** Complete the table of irregular verb forms below.

Infinitive	Past Simple	Infinitive	Past Simple	Infinitive	Past Simple	Infinitive	Past Simple
bite			ate	lay			sold
	blew	fall			left	shake	
bring			felt	lend			shot
	built	find			lay	strike	
catch			forgot	lose			swam
	chose	give			meant	teach	
cost			held	ride			woke
	drank	hurt			rang	win	
drive			kept	rise			wrote



#3 Choose the best answer A, B, or C.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus this morning.  
A. was catching      B. caught      C. caught
2. She had to leave school early, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. hadn't she      B. didn't have she      C. didn't she
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ your clothes on the bed so you can put them away.  
A. lay      B. lied      C. laid
4. Who \_\_\_\_\_ the situation to his friends?  
A. did he explain      B. explained      C. did explain
5. Fred and Carmen \_\_\_\_\_ at home last night.  
A. were      B. was      C. did
6. When the management \_\_\_\_\_ ticket prices, attendance drastically dropped.  
A. raised      B. rose      C. rise
7. Did I fall asleep when I was watching television? — Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. you were      B. you did      C. you fell
8. Everybody was doing something when the boss came in, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. weren't they      B. wasn't everybody      C. didn't he
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ the museum last year.  
A. founded      B. found      C. set
10. Old Mrs Slade doesn't know many people these days, but she \_\_\_\_\_ lots of friends when she was young.  
A. used to have      B. would have      C. didn't use to have
11. They \_\_\_\_\_ nothing at the disco.  
A. didn't drink      B. drank      C. didn't drank
12. John went to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit his brother last Sunday.  
A. the      B. —      C. a
13. He learnt to ride a bicycle when he was a child, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. didn't he      B. wasn't he      C. did he
14. We made the house tidy, and our guests \_\_\_\_\_ soon afterwards.  
A. arrived      B. would arrive      C. used to arrive
15. What \_\_\_\_\_ her life to?  
A. did Mother Teresa devote      B. Mother Teresa devoted      C. devoted Mother Teresa
16. I dropped my bag when I \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus.  
A. was runing      B. ran      C. was running
17. Before he came here he \_\_\_\_\_ to live in a provincial town.  
A. used      B. didn't used      C. did use

18. We stood on the cliff and watched as the sun \_\_\_\_\_ in all its glory.  
*A. rose                                      B. rises                                      C. raised*
19. The Titanic \_\_\_\_\_ to New York when it \_\_\_\_\_ an iceberg in the Atlantic.  
*A. travelled... hit    B. was travelling... was hitting    C. was travelling... hit*
20. \_\_\_\_\_ he bought Anita her ice-cream, she gave him a sweet smile of thanks.  
*A. While    B. When                      C. —*
21. She was doing her homework while Robin was at \_\_\_\_\_ school.  
*A. —                                      B. the                                      C. A*

## UNIT 3: PATH TO SUCCESS

### *Focus on*

- *Career Prospects*
- *Present Perfect Simple*
- *just/already/yet/still*
- *any more/any longer/no longer*
- *since/for/ago*
- *Present Perfect Simple vs. Past Simple*
- *Further practice: Articles*

### Present perfect simple

#### *Usage:*

- to talk about something which started in the past and continues up to the present—with time references like **before (now), never, ever, up till now, so far**

*She's **seen** this film **before**.*

*I've **never been** there.*

***Have** you ever **eaten** Chinese food?*

*He's **received** 30 cards up to now.*

*I've **never tasted** papaya so far.*

- with *since/for*

*We **haven't been** there since we were young. She's **worked** in London for six months.*

- with **today, this morning, this afternoon**, etc. when these periods of time are not finished at the time of speaking

*I've **written** four letters **this morning**. (It is still "this morning".)*

- when the result of a past action is connected to the present

*Someone's **broken** the window. (The window is now broken.)*

*We've **cleaned** the flat. (The flat is now clean.)*

- to describe personal experience (with superlatives or ordinals) *She's **met** a lot of interesting people. (= in her life, up to now) He is the most intelligent person I've **met**.*

*This is the third time we've **complained**.*

- to announce "news"

*I've **found** a new job.*

- to describe actions which happened at an unspecified time in the past  
—with no time reference at all

*He **has passed** his driving test.*

- with references to recent time, like **just, recently, lately, already, still, yet**  
*I've **just** eaten.*

*He **has recently** become a director. I **haven't** seen you **lately**.*

*They've **already** spoken to me. She **still** **hasn't** answered my letter.*

*I **haven't** drunk my tea yet.*

## POSITIVE FORM

**has/have + Past Participle (Verb + -ed)**

I	
You	
We	
You	
They	

**have ('ve) done\*** this job before.

He	
She	
It	

**has ('s) arrived\*\*** just in time.

\*The ending of past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (Spelling of ending **-ed**. See Appendix p. 227)

\*\* For a list of irregular past participles see Appendix p. 228–229.

**Exercise 1.** Here are the past participles of some common verbs. Write the infinitive.

Infinitive	Past Part.	Infinitive	Past Part.	Infinitive	Past Part.
	been		stopped		sung
	lived		frozen		fallen
	bought		taken		cut
	made		won		begun
	driven		swum		become
	stolen		given		heard

Infinitive	Past Part.	Infinitive	Past Part.	Infinitive	Past Part.
	taught		worn		left
	felt		built		tried
	travelled		chosen		eaten
	loved		sold		found

**Exercise 2.** Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets in Present Perfect Simple.

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ (sign) a contract.
2. He \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) his parents every other day for the last two weeks.
3. Oh, no! I just \_\_\_\_\_ (ruin) my new suit.
4. An earthquake in a far-off country \_\_\_\_\_ (kill) 500 people.
5. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) an unexpected tunnel inside the Great Pyramid.
6. People often \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) Eric to chain up his dog. He agrees, but does nothing.
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a lot of friends.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ (be) here for two hours.
9. They \_\_\_\_\_ (go) camping many times.
10. I'm afraid, I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) my book at home.
11. We \_\_\_\_\_ (have) three exams so far this winter.
12. I'm not feeling well. I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) a cold.
13. Teresa knows those men rather well. They \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) before.

**Exercise 3.** We can often change a present perfect sentence into a present simple sentence with more or less the same meaning. Change the following present perfect sentences into present simple sentences with a similar meaning.

*Example:* They've arrived in Rome. = They're in Rome.

1. He's lost his address book.
2. Sue's done the shopping.
3. Walter's broken his leg.
4. I've made some sandwiches for breakfast.
5. She's learnt some German grammar.
6. He's gone to work for IBM.
7. They've killed the criminal.
8. The rain has stopped.

9. The secretary has forgotten the client's name.
10. You've failed the test.
11. I've had a hard day.
12. Someone has stolen his wallet.

**Exercise 4.** In the following sentences, say if 's stands for **is** or **has**.

*Example: He's worried. (= is)*

*She's left. (= has)*

- |                           |                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. She's tired.           | 11. She's gone out.                |
| 2. She's arrived.         | 12. It's disappeared.              |
| 3. It's escaped.          | 13. He's washed the car.           |
| 4. He's ill.              | 14. She's disappointed in her job. |
| 5. He's eaten.            | 15. It's dead.                     |
| 6. She's done it.         | 16. He's fallen asleep.            |
| 7. He's left the country. | 17. She's been there.              |
| 8. He's stopped working   | 18. He's approved her decision.    |
| 9. He's had a cold.       | 19. She's frightened.              |
| 10. It's died.            | 20. Jack's come back.              |

**Exercise 5.** Use the words provided below to make up true sentences.

*Example: best movie* — The best movie I've ever seen is "Rain Man."

*most important possession*—The most important possession I've ever had is/was my own PC.

1. best singer \_\_\_\_\_
2. most boring subject \_\_\_\_\_
3. best book \_\_\_\_\_
4. most beautiful place \_\_\_\_\_
5. most delicious food \_\_\_\_\_
6. most unusual hobby \_\_\_\_\_
7. most remarkable person \_\_\_\_\_
8. worst computer game \_\_\_\_\_
9. most frightening experience \_\_\_\_\_
10. most fashionable thing \_\_\_\_\_
11. best present \_\_\_\_\_
12. most amusing play \_\_\_\_\_

## NEGATIVE FORM

***has not (hasn't) / have not (haven't) + Past Participle (Verb + -ed)***

I		
You		
We		
You		
They		

***have not (haven't) eaten*** anything.

He		
She		
It		

***has not (hasn't) been*** there.

**Exercise 6.** Make the following positive sentences negative.

*Example:* George's won the lottery. — *George hasn't won the lottery.*

1. He's had a shave.
2. I've seen that film before.
3. Sally's gone out.
4. We've had our holiday this year.
5. There has been a revolution in San Serife.
6. The Browns have painted their house.
7. I've bought a new car.
8. She's done her homework.
9. He's written ten letters so far.
10. Up to now I've visited Australia and Canada.
11. You've lived here for 20 years.
12. I've known him for many years.

## GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b><i>Have</i></b>	I you we you they	ever <b><i>done</i></b> this task before? – Yes, / (No,)	I you we you they	<b><i>have(n't).</i></b>
--------------------	-------------------------------	--	-------------------------------	--------------------------

<b><i>Has</i></b>	he she it	<b><i>checked</i></b> all the information? – Yes, / (No,)	he she it	<b><i>has(n't).</i></b>
-------------------	-----------------	---	-----------------	-------------------------

**Exercise 7.** Use the prompts to ask questions beginning with Have you ever...? Give true answers.

- |                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1) lose/your passport?       | 13) steal/anything?                  |
| 2) fly/in a helicopter?      | 14) read/an article in English?      |
| 3) travel/abroad?            | 15) leave/things on a bus?           |
| 4) break/your leg?           | 16) feed/a wild animal?              |
| 5) eat/a lobster?            | 17) speak/to anyone famous?          |
| 6) ride/a horse?             | 18) sleep/in a tent?                 |
| 7) fall asleep/during class? | 19) walk up/a mountain?              |
| 8) see/a UFO?                | 20) play/in any kind of sports team? |
| 9) write/a poem?             | 21) be/late for classes?             |
| 10) walk/in your sleep?      | 22) make/a difficult decision?       |
| 11) tell/a lie?              | 23) win/a lottery?                   |
| 12) sing/in a choir?         | 24) wear/a uniform?                  |

**Exercise 8.** Rewrite each sentence as positive, negative, or a general question, according to the instructions. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example:* Diana has recently won \$10,000. (Question)

—*Has Diana recently won \$ 10,000?*

I've seen John this morning. (Negative)

—*I haven't seen John this morning.*

Mary hasn't written many books. (Positive)

—*Mary has written a lot of books.*

1. Julia has decided to be a doctor. (Question)
2. The library has lost a number of books lately. (Negative)
3. I haven't brought my little dog with me. (Positive)
4. Jack's heard of Frank's engagement to Judy. (Question)
5. Mrs Taylor has gone to Canada on business. (Negative)
6. They've lived in London for five years. (Question)
7. I've seen the statue of Liberty. (Negative)
8. He hasn't had a letter from his father. (Positive)
9. He's returned from a holiday in Spain. (Question)
10. These paintings have been in possession of his family for generations.  
(Negative)
11. There has been a sharp increase in house prices in recent months. (Question)
12. A friend of mine hasn't put on weight lately. (Positive)



## ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

<b>Have</b>	I you we you they	<b><i>passed</i></b> the exam or failed it? – <i>The results are not known yet.</i>
-------------	-------------------------------	---

<b>Has</b>	he she it	<b><i>completed</i></b> the project or not? – <i>Not yet.</i>
------------	-----------------	---

**Exercise 9.** Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.

*Example: she/learn/English/French? — Has she learnt English or French?—She's learnt French.*

1. he/buy/a Toyota/a BMW?
2. she/graduate from/*Harward University*/Yale University?
3. the driver/*pass a driving test*/fail it?
4. they/accept our offer/*reject* it?
5. you/pay/*in cash*/by credit card?
6. she/run/a relay race/*a marathon race*?
7. they/win the match/*lose it*?
8. Dick/travel/*by train*/by plane?
9. you/go/to *Athens*/to Kerkira?
10. they/climb/*the Alps*/the Andes?
11. he/study medicine/*for 5 years*/for 7 years?
12. Pete/live in a hostel/*rent a room*?
13. you/make/*many*/only a few grammar mistakes?
14. she/stay *at home*/go out?
15. you/borrow the money/*lend it* to him?
16. Roy/have top grades/*in Physics*/in all the subjects?
17. they/swim/*a long distance*/a short distance?
18. Mr Wolley/*fix his car himself*/take it to a garage?

## SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>Why</b>	<i>have</i>	you	<i>done</i>	this?	— I just wanted to help.
<b>Where</b>	<i>has</i>	he	<i>gone</i>	to?	—To Edinburgh.
<b>How</b>	<i>has</i>	she	<i>travelled</i>	to Paris?	— By plane, as usual.
<b>How long</b>	<i>has</i>	she	<i>stayed</i>	in France?	— For two months.
<b>How much</b> (money)	<i>have</i>	they	<i>spent</i>	on their house?	—An absolute fortune!
<b>What kind of</b> film	<i>have</i>	you	<i>seen?</i>		— Quite a dull one.
<b>What</b> dictionary	<i>have</i>	you	<i>bought?</i>		— Collins Cobuild.
<b>Whose</b> house	<i>have</i>	we	<i>rented?</i>		— Mr Brown's.

## OBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<i>have</i>	you	<i>talked to?</i>		— To our French teacher.
<b>What</b>	<i>has</i>	Jane	<i>been</i>	afraid of?	— The darkness.

## SUBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<i>has</i>	—	<i>helped</i>	you?	— A friend of mine.
<b>What</b>	<i>has</i>	—	<i>happened?</i>		— I don't know.

### NOTE:

There are no 'When questions' with Perfect Tense in English.  
When did you go to Spain ? — Last month.

**Exercise 10.** Complete the questions using a suitable verb.

*Example:* — Have you finished with that newspaper yet?  
— No, I'm still reading it. I won't be long.

- I'm looking for the room keys. \_\_\_\_\_ them?  
— Yes, they were on the kitchen table a moment ago.
- \_\_\_\_\_ ever \_\_\_\_\_ an accident?  
— Yes, once, a few years ago.
- How many times \_\_\_\_\_ your driving test?  
— Three. My fourth is next Friday.
- You're very late. Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
— To the dentist's. I've had a toothache since morning.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ for breakfast today?  
— Just a cup of coffee and a sandwich.
- ever the photocopier before?

- Yes, many times.
7. —Hello, Dick. Haven't seen you for ages. Where \_\_\_\_\_?  
—I've just returned from Italy.
8. —How much \_ this morning?  
—Not a penny. Our firm has gone bankrupt.
9. —Mmm... It smells delicious. Which dish \_\_\_\_\_ this time?  
—A Greek most famous dish—Mousaka. Its taste is unforgettable.
- 10.—I can't find my notebook which I lent you yesterday. Where \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
—It's on the shelf over there.
- 11.—You hate flying, don't you? How \_\_\_\_\_ this time?  
—By plane! I just had to. And you know, I rather liked it.
- 12.—\_\_\_\_\_ a 'thank you' note to the Smiths?  
—Not yet. But I'm going to.

**Exercise 11.** Read the situations and write questions with the words in brackets.

*Example:* You know that Tom is a good friend of Lora. You ask Tom:  
(How long/know/Lora?) *How long have you known Lora?*

- You are talking to a friend about Carol. She now works as a tour guide. You ask your friend: (How long/work/as a tour guide?)
- Alan always wears the same shoes. These are very old shoes. You ask him: (How long/have/those shoes?)
- Lina tells you that her son is in hospital. You ask her: (How long/be/in hospital?)
- Your friend's sister went to New Zealand some time ago and she's still there. You ask your friend: (How long/be/in New Zealand?)
- You meet Ben on a train. You can hardly recognize him: he's wearing a beard. You ask him: (How long/have/a beard?)
- You know that Jane is good at scuba diving. You ask her: (How long/do/scuba diving?)
- You know that Mr and Mrs Temple are celebrating their wedding anniversary. Mrs Mills is a good friend of the family. You ask her: (How long/be/married?)
- Most of Martin's friends play the guitar. But Martin is definitely the best. You ask him: (How long/play/the guitar?)

## TAG QUESTIONS

I/You/We/They **have ('ve) just returned** from a business trip, **haven't** I/you/we/they?

– Yes, / (No,).... **have(n't).**

He/She/It **has('s) changed, has** he/she/it?

– Yes, / (No,).... **has(n't).**

I/You/We/They **have not (haven't) been there, have** I/you/we/they?

– Yes, / (No,).... **have(n't).**

He/She/It **has not (hasn't) come** yet?

– Yes, / (No,).... **has(n't).**

**Exercise 12.** Give the correct tag to these sentences.

1. They've considered our offer, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. She hasn't seen Henry lately, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Everyone has heard about the leaning tower of Pisa, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Their dog has attacked two children, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. The medicine hasn't taken effect yet, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. The boss has been ill with a cold for the past week, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. You've seen the news report on malaria, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. He's never seen such a pretty girl in all his life, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. Sally and her sister have got so many things to do lately, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. They haven't fallen behind their studies, \_\_\_\_\_?
11. The lawn has turned so green with all this rain, \_\_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 13.** Give true answers.

1. You've always wanted to become a scientist, haven't you?
2. Your parents have brought you up to be an independent person, haven't they?
3. You've never failed your exams, have you?
4. You've always managed to get along with your classmates/fellow students/parents, haven't you?
5. Your lifestyle has changed since you entered university, hasn't it?
6. You have always been sociable, haven't you?
7. You've never been interested in Modern Arts, have you?
8. You've always had a PC, haven't you?
9. You've done a two-year course of Mathematics, haven't you?
10. You've travelled much, haven't you?
11. You've fallen in love many times, haven't you?

12. You've enjoyed every moment of the last two years, haven't you?
13. You've never followed your parents' advice, have you?
14. You've never flown a hot-air balloon, have you?
15. You haven't seen a ghost, have you?
16. You haven't made a fortune, have you?
17. You've never cooked your meals before, have you?
18. You've always believed in love at first sight, haven't you?

**Exercise 14.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

1. I've attended *English classes* for six months now.
2. *He's come here* to tune our piano.
3. I've painted this room.
4. They haven't seen each other *for a long time*.
5. We've had such a *busy* day!
6. John's won *a lot of* money.
7. A factory has closed, and *300* people have lost their jobs.
8. I've bought *this nice new pad* to take notes during the meeting.
9. They've built a motorway *around London*.
10. He's read this article *on the Antarctic*.
11. Jack's gone *abroad* on business.
12. I've just received *a bill* from my solicitors.
13. *We haven't paid our gas bill* and have received a final warning.
14. I've discussed the idea *with her*.
15. I've been in Rio *since May*.
16. They've lived *apart* for years.
17. They've just appointed *a new managers* my bank.
18. We've arranged these books *in alphabetical order*.
19. *I've* made arrangements for my holiday next month.
20. *Melanie* has become a company director.

### JUST / ALREADY / YET / STILL

#### • **Just** (*Note the position*)

Present Perfect Simple is used with **just** for a recently completed action  
*He's just gone out.* - *He went out a few minutes ago.* *Has he just gone out?*  
**Just** is not used in the negative.

#### • **Already** (*Note the position*)

is used to say that something happened sooner than expected  
*—Don't forget to call Mary. —I've already called her.*

Has she **already** left? Has she left **already**? Has she left the house **already**?  
*Already* is not used in the negative.

• **Yet** (Note the position)

is used to show that the speaker is expecting something to happen

*She hasn't phoned **yet**. Have you paid the bill **yet**?*

***Yet*** is not used in the positive.

• **Still** (Note the position)

it is used to say that something continues to happen until a particular time

*He's **still** asleep. Do you **still** love me? I **still** don't understand the rule. You **still** haven't given us the keys.*

**Exercise 15.** Write these sentences, putting the words in brackets in the correct place. If two answers are possible, write them both.

*Example: I'm sorry, she's gone out—she went out some time ago. (already)*

I'm sorry, she's **already** gone out—she went out some time ago.

I'm sorry, she's **gone** out **already**—she went out some time ago.

1. Have you finished? It's time to go. (yet)
2. I've told her several times that I can't come. (already)
3. Though Jack's moved out of the neighbourhood, we see him quite a lot.  
(still)
4. You've missed her—if you hurry, you'll catch her in the street. (just)
5. Have you finished painting the house? (yet)
6. This letter has arrived for you. (just)
7. I've said that I'm not going to be here tomorrow. (already)
8. She lives in London. (still)
9. Have you got your passport? (already)
10. I haven't explained. (yet)
11. He's told me that I've got the sack. (just)
12. Have you seen Mary? (already)

**Exercise 16.** Put in *still*, *yet* and *already*.

1. "Has the postman come \_\_\_\_\_?"—"No, he's \_\_\_\_\_ chatting to the neighbour."
2. You needn't wash the dishes. I've \_\_\_\_\_ done them.
3. "Has it stopped raining \_\_\_\_\_?"—"No, not \_\_\_\_\_."
4. "I'm going to Bangkok next month."—"Oh, you'll enjoy it. I've \_\_\_\_\_ been there.»

5. "Have you finished your homework \_\_\_\_\_?"—"No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ doing it."
6. She's \_\_\_\_\_ arrived. The train was early.
7. "Where's Brian? Has he \_\_\_\_\_ left?"—"No, not \_\_\_\_\_. He's \_\_\_\_\_ in his office.»
8. He's left Warsaw but he hasn't reached Prague \_\_\_\_\_.
9. "Have you finished your report \_\_\_\_\_?"—"No, I'm \_\_\_\_\_ writing it."
10. Patrick has learned to drive, but he hasn't got his driving license \_\_\_\_\_.
11. You needn't tell Greg. He \_\_\_\_\_ knows.
12. I didn't know you were \_\_\_\_\_ working for that company. You've been there for ages.
13. Kate \_\_\_\_\_ lives in Manchester, where she was born.
14. I'm still trying to finish my homework. I've \_\_\_\_\_ been at it for three hours.
15. The children are grown up now but they \_\_\_\_\_ like to come home for the holidays.
16. I've \_\_\_\_\_ seen that film and I don't want to see it again.
17. I've read the book "Gone with the Wind," but I haven't seen the film \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 17.** Read the situations and write sentences with **just, already or yet**.

*Example:* You are eating in a cafe. The waiter thinks you have finished and starts to take your plate away.

*You say:* "Wait a minute. I haven't finished yet." (*not/finish*)

1. Your boss goes out. Five minutes later the phone rings, and the caller says "Can I speak to Mr Jackson, please?" You say : «I'm afraid, \_\_\_\_\_.» (go out)
2. You know that a friend of yours is looking for a job. Perhaps he's been successful. Ask him: " \_\_\_\_\_?" (find)
3. After lunch you go to see Ann at her house. She says, "Would you like something to eat?" You say: «No, thank you. \_\_\_\_\_.» (have lunch)
4. You are going to a restaurant this evening. You phone to reserve a table. Later your friend says, "Shall I phone to reserve a table?" You say: «No, \_\_\_\_\_ it.» (do)
5. Your roommate went to the library, but a few minutes ago he returned. Somebody asks, "Is Andrew still at the library?" You say: "No, \_\_\_\_\_." (come back)

6. You are leaving early tomorrow. You want to call a taxi, but you can't get through. Your mother wants to know if everything is OK. You say: "The trouble is I've got a lot of luggage, and I ... ." (call a taxi)
7. You like baseball, but you've never played it. Somebody asks you, "Do you like playing baseball?" You say: «I don't know. I ... it.» (try)
8. You've arrived at the airport to meet a group of American basketball players. You go to the information desk and ask: « \_ Flight 875 \_\_\_\_\_ ? \_ » (land)

**Exercise 18. A.** Think about today. Write some things that you decided to do when you got up this morning.

**B.** Write sentences telling what you **have already done** today and what you **haven't done yet**.

### **NOT ... ANY MORE / NOT ... ANY LONGER / NO LONGER**

- **Any more and any longer**

are used at the end of negative sentences to say that a past situation has changed

*Mrs Taylor doesn't live in London any more (any longer). She's moved to Bristol.*

- **No longer** (in formal English)

is used in front of the main verb (but after the verb 'to be') to say that a past situation has changed

*He no longer wants to buy it. She is no longer a student.*

#### **NOTE:**

**'no more'** is not used in this way.

**Exercise 19.** Put the correct word in brackets in the correct place in the sentence.

*Example:* My father is a young man. (any more/no longer).

*My father is no longer a young man.*

1. Annie doesn't live here. (any longer/no longer)
2. Sue works for the same company in Newcastle. (any longer/no longer)
3. My sister isn't a young child. (any more/no longer)
4. Her father is unemployed. (any longer/no longer)
5. There is a large shipbuilding industry in Britain. (any more/no longer)



6. Many rivers are safe to swim in nowadays. (any longer/no longer)
7. Thanks for help. I won't trouble you. (any more/no longer)
8. He's not going to play this game. (any longer/no longer)

**Exercise 20.** Fill the blanks with *yet* or *any longer/any more*.

1. Time is running out. We can't stay \_\_\_\_\_.
2. We aren't ready to start \_\_\_\_\_. Let's wait a little longer.
3. Sue has posted the letter this week but I haven't got it \_\_\_\_\_.
4. You cannot stay \_\_\_\_\_. The meeting has already finished.
5. If you stand there talking \_\_\_\_\_ we'll miss our train.
6. I've waited long enough. I'm not going to wait \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I used to eat a large breakfast but I don't \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Henry sent the telegram two weeks ago, and they haven't received it \_\_\_\_\_.

### SINCE / FOR

- **for** + a period of time

<b>for</b>	three hours
	four weeks
	six months
	ten years
	a long time
	ages

*I've had this job **for** six years.*

*They've been married **for** a long time.*

- **since** + a starting point

<b>since</b>	3 o'clock
	May, 5 <sup>th</sup>
	September
	1999
	he finished school

*He's wanted to be a pilot **since** he was a little boy.*

*We've worked together **since** 2015.*

**Exercise 21.** Rewrite the sentences with since and for.

1. Jack has been the manager \_\_\_\_\_ three years.
2. I've lived in Moscow \_\_\_\_\_ I was three years old.
3. Great Britain has had decimal currency \_\_\_\_\_ 1971.
4. Sam has wanted to be an accountant \_\_\_\_\_ eight years.
5. He's attended English classes \_\_\_\_\_ two years.
6. I haven't slept \_\_\_\_\_ two nights.
7. They've had this car \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
8. He's known her \_\_\_\_\_ school.
9. I've studied engineering \_\_\_\_\_ quite a few years.
10. We've been with the firm \_\_\_\_\_ seven months.
11. Liza's lived here \_\_\_\_\_ three days.
12. She's been an office manager \_\_\_\_\_ 2010.

**Exercise 22.** Rewrite the expressions.

*Example: since yesterday = for 24 hours*

*for 30 years = since the 20<sup>th</sup> century*

1. since 1970 = \_\_\_\_\_
2. since Sunday = \_\_\_\_\_
3. since 9 o'clock = \_\_\_\_\_
4. since my birthday = \_\_\_\_\_
5. for 10 years = \_\_\_\_\_
6. for 3 days = \_\_\_\_\_
7. for the last two hours = \_\_\_\_\_
8. for the last three weeks = \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 23.** Choose the right tense.

*Example: Daniel (has been/was) quite different since he (has got/got) married.*

*Daniel has been quite different since he got married.*

*Since I (have entered/entered) university, I (have lived/lived) here.*

*Since I entered university, I have lived in the university campus.*

1. Things (have been/were) difficult since my father (has lost/lost) his job.
2. Since my neighbour (has taken up/took up) the saxophone, I (haven't had/didn't have) any peace.
3. Since her mother (has died/died), Dana (has been/was) lonely.
4. Mr Danis (has been/was) very strange since he (has had/had) the accident.
5. Since Charles (has gone/went) to live in Singapore, we (haven't heard/didn't hear) anything from him.

6. He (*has never trusted/never trusted*) Liz since she (*has lied/lie*d) to him about her past.
7. They (*have had/had*) a lot of problems since they (*have moved/moved*) to Bogota, Colombia.
8. He (*has never mentioned/didn't mention*) her name since their friendship (*has broken up/broke up*).
9. Since I (*have been/was*) at university, I (*have been/was*) in politics.
10. They (*have lived/lived*) next door to us since they (*have moved/moved*) here in 2004.

### PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE VS PAST SIMPLE

Present Perfect Simple	Past Simple
<p>1. It is used to talk about something which <u>started in the past and continues to the present</u></p> <p><i>She's <b>lived</b> in Cardiff <b>for</b> ten years.</i> (= She still lives in Cardiff now.)</p> <p><i>I've <b>spoken</b> to Peter this morning.</i> (It's still morning.)</p>	<p>1. It is used to talk about something which <u>started and finished in the past</u></p> <p><i>She <b>lived</b> in Belfast for ten years.</i> (= She doesn't live in Belfast now.)</p> <p><i>I <b>spoke</b> to Peter this morning.</i> (It's now afternoon, evening, or night time.)</p>
<p>2. It is used when the result of a past action <u>is connected to the present</u></p> <p><i>I've <b>lost</b> the key.</i> (= I haven't got it now.)</p>	<p>2. It is used when the result of a past action <u>is NOT connected to the present</u></p> <p><i>I <b>lost</b> my key, but then I found it.</i> (Now I have the key again.)</p>
<p>3. It is used <u>to announce 'news'</u></p> <p><i>Someone <b>has stolen</b> my bike.</i></p>	<p>3. It is used <u>to give details of the news</u></p> <p><i>I <b>left</b> the bike outside a shop and when I <b>returned</b>, my bike <b>wasn't</b> there.</i></p>
<p>4. It is used with expressions which refer to 'any time up to now' <i>lately, recently, never, so far, already, yet, before</i>, etc.</p> <p><i><b>Have</b> you ever <b>driven</b> a car?</i> <i>He's never <b>been</b> to Edinburgh.</i> <i>I've <b>taken up</b> painting recently.</i></p>	<p>3. It is used with expressions which refer to a definite past time <i>yesterday, last week, a month ago</i>, etc.</p> <p><i><b>Did</b> you <b>drive</b> a car yesterday?</i> <i>He <b>went</b> to Manchester last month.</i> <i>I <b>took up</b> painting a week ago.</i></p>
<p>5. It <u>is never used</u> to ask <u>when</u> something happened</p>	<p>5. It is used to ask when something happened</p> <p><i><b>When did</b> you <b>graduate</b>?</i></p>

**Exercise 24.** Finished or unfinished time? Put the expressions provided below in two lists.

*Example:* Finished time  
on Monday

Unfinished time  
in my life

long time ago	at 5 o'clock	recently
just after I entered university	all her life	in 1993
when I was a first year student	ever since	this year
last Christmas	for years	so far
last week	in July	before she was born
today	on Friday evening	a fortnight ago

Finished time	Unfinished time

**Exercise 25.** There are mistakes in some of these sentences. Find the mistakes and correct them.

1. I live in Brighton. I lived here for twelve years.
2. When did Neil Armstrong walk on the moon?
3. I've gone to Los Angeles in 1997.
4. You did a lot of interesting things in your life.
5. How many people have died in the Second World War?
6. What can we do? I think something dreadful happened.
7. We saw the new Steven Spielberg film last week.
8. Robert de Niro began acting in the 1970s.
9. When have you bought your new car?
10. Doris was interested in music since she's been a child.
11. I wonder how long he's studied before he graduated.
12. It's the first time she cooked pizza. But it tastes delicious.

**Exercise 26.** Put the verbs in brackets into Present Perfect Simple or Past Simple.

1. She \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) school three years ago.
2. —I know Paul Carter.  
—Really? How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (know) him?  
—Oh, quite a long time now.  
—When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (first meet) him?
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) the 8 o'clock bus this morning.
4. She \_\_\_\_\_ (do) a lot of stupid things in her life.
5. (*It's 9.30 in the morning*) — \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ Mrs Lynne this morning?  
— Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) her when I \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) in the office, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out soon afterwards.
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (often wonder) what Rick does for a living.
7. (*It's the middle of the afternoon*).—I'm really hungry. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) any breakfast this morning and I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) time to go out for anything to eat this afternoon.
8. Judy \_\_\_\_\_ (read) a lot of love stories when she was at school.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (see) any good plays recently?
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/see) much of Helen lately.
11. — \_\_\_\_\_ your wife \_\_\_\_\_ (ever have) pneumonia?  
—Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ (have) it twice. She \_\_\_\_\_ (have) it eight years ago, and once when she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a child.
12. Tolstoy \_\_\_\_\_ (write) *War and Peace*.
13. Oh, no! Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) my car bag!
14. We \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ (never eat) Chinese food in my life.
16. When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (pass) your driving test?
17. Who \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) America?
18. Amazing news! Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ (discover) a new planet!
19. She \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a spoilt child.
20. —When \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Mr Brown?  
— I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) him the day before yesterday.
21. Last year the Smiths \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to a new flat in the suburbs. They \_\_\_\_\_ (like) living there. But the journey to work \_\_\_\_\_ (be) too long. It \_\_\_\_\_ (take) them nearly two hours to get to town. In the end, they had to move out.
22. After leaving university, Cathy \_\_\_\_\_ (find) it very difficult to get a job.

**Exercise 27.** Larry wants to go to an art college and Ben Wilier, one of the lecturers, is interviewing him. Complete the questions Ben asks him. Read the whole conversation before you start.

Ben: Right, Larry, let's find out something about you. You're obviously not a teenager, so when \_\_\_\_\_ school?

Larry: Five years ago, actually.

Ben: And where \_\_\_\_\_ since then?

Larry: Well, I've had several jobs.

Ben: What \_\_\_\_\_ first?

Larry: I worked in a cafe for about a year. I needed to save some money.

Ben: Why \_\_\_\_\_ money?

Larry: I wanted to travel a bit before I started studying.

Ben: Where \_\_\_\_\_ to go?

Larry: Well, the Middle East, Latin America, Australia.

Ben: Good Lord! And \_\_\_\_\_ all those places?

Larry: No, not yet. I've been to Brazil and Peru so far. And I spent some months in Turkey.

Ben: What \_\_\_\_\_ there?

Larry: I stayed with some friends near Izmir. It was wonderful.

Ben: You're very lucky. And now you want to come to college. \_\_\_\_\_ some pictures to show me?

Larry: Um, yes. I have a small portfolio here.

Ben: Where \_\_\_\_\_ this work?

Larry: Mostly in Turkey.

Ben: Why \_\_\_\_\_ any in South America?

Larry: I didn't have time really. And I was travelling light, I just did some pencil sketches.

Ben: \_\_\_\_\_ them here with you?

Larry: They're at the back of the portfolio.

Ben: Well, Larry, I'm very impressed. When \_\_\_\_\_ interested in painting and drawing? Larry: I think I always have been.

Ben: I can believe that. Will you come with me? I want to show this work to my colleagues right away.

Larry: Of course. Thank you very much.

**Exercise 28.** Ask "*How long ... ?*" and "*When ... ?*" questions.

*Example:* Amy's grandparents have lived in Ireland all their life.

— *How long have they lived in Ireland?*

Amy visited them two years ago.

— *When did Amy visit them?*

1. Frank and Rachel have known each other for five years.
2. He met Rachel when he travelled to Wales five years ago.
3. Debby and her friend have worked in a bank for two months.
4. They got this job two months ago.
5. The manager has been ill for the last three days.
6. He fell ill three days ago.
7. Bob and Nick had a most unpleasant talk with the dean an hour ago.
8. They have missed all their lectures for the last two weeks.
9. Lora has studied for the end-of-year exam all week.
10. She did rather badly in her exams last year.

**Exercise 29.** Write complete sentences. Use Present Perfect Simple and Past Simple.

*Example:* You/be/tired/all day. What time/you/go to bed/last night?

You've been tired all day. What time did you go to bed last night?

1. Monica/never/meet/her grandfather. He/die/in 1967.
2. I/buy/a new tie/last week, but I/not/wear/it/yet.
3. He/already/see/that film. He/see/it/when/he/be/in London.
4. I/just/have/my lunch. I/finish eating/ten minutes ago.
5. I/never/play/tennis/in my life, but I/play/badminton/when/I/be/at school.
6. I/make/six mistakes/so far/today. Yesterday/I/only/make/two mistakes/ altogether.
7. Jack/live/in Greece/for the last three years. He/live/in Africa/before/he/go/ to Greece.
8. Greg is going to sell his car. He/only/buy/it/last month. He loves changing cars. He/have/at least/10 cars/in his life.
9. —you/speak/to him?  
—Yes. I/speak/to him/before/the party.
10. It/not/stop raining/since/Saturday.
11. Brasilia/be/the capital of Brazil/since 1960. Before 1960, Rio de Janeiro/ be/the capital.
12. I/not/see/the new manager/yet. When/she/start working/for the company?
13. Paula and Laurence/be married/since last year. They/meet/at university.
14. I/break/my arm/a week ago. I/not/use/a computer/for my work/since then.

**Exercise 30.** Put the verbs in brackets into Present Perfect Simple or Past Simple. If two answers are possible, write the more likely one.

A. Helen Parker is one of the most interesting people I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet): she is only twenty-seven, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) to over thirty different countries. Five years ago, she \_\_\_\_\_ a secretary in Birmingham, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (decide) to give up her job and see the world. Since then, her life \_\_\_\_\_ (change) completely.

The first time she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) abroad was seven years ago, when she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) just twenty. She \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a boat to France and then \_\_\_\_\_ (hitch-hike) around Europe for six weeks. She \_\_\_\_\_ (visit) Europe many times since that first trip, of course, but this holiday \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the one which \_\_\_\_\_ (make) her start travelling. She \_\_\_\_\_ (never forget) the excitement of those six weeks, although it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) not all enjoyable. When she \_\_\_\_\_ (be) on a train, somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) her purse: she \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) all her money, and \_\_\_\_\_ (have) to work in a restaurant for a fortnight. She \_\_\_\_\_ (make) some good friends there, however, and \_\_\_\_\_ (return) several times since then.

B. Twenty years ago few people \_\_\_\_\_ (realise) that computers were about to become part of our daily lives. This short period of time \_\_\_\_\_ (see) enormous changes, in business, education, and public administration. Jobs \_\_\_\_\_ (take) weeks to complete in the past and clerks \_\_\_\_\_ (spend) all day to copy and check calculations. In offices, the soft hum and clicking of word processors \_\_\_\_\_ (replace) the clatter of typewriters. Schoolchildren \_\_\_\_\_ (become) as familiar with hardware and

software as their parents \_\_\_\_\_ (be) with pencils and exercise books. Computerization of public records \_\_\_\_\_ (enable) government departments to analyze the needs of citizens in detail. Some of us may wonder, however, whether life \_\_\_\_\_ (really/improve) as a result of these changes. Many jobs \_\_\_\_\_ (disappear), for example, when intelligent machines \_\_\_\_\_ (take) over the work. Employers complain that clerical staff \_\_\_\_\_ (become) dependent on calculators and cannot do simple arithmetic. Certainly, many people may now be wondering whether the spread of computers \_\_\_\_\_ (bring) us as many problems as it \_\_\_\_\_ (solve).



**Exercise 31.** Complete the following sentences using *ago*, *for*, or *since*, and put the verbs in brackets in either in Past Simple or Present Perfect Simple.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) to ride a bicycle many years \_\_\_\_\_, when I was quite small, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ride) one \_\_\_\_\_ a long time. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/have) much opportunity \_\_\_\_\_ we \_\_\_\_\_ (move) to the city. But we \_\_\_\_\_ (buy) our daughter a bicycle for her birthday three months \_\_\_\_\_, and then I \_\_\_\_\_ (want) to ride again.

3. Oxford \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a centre of learning \_\_\_\_\_ a few centuries.

4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (know) Rick \_\_\_\_\_ several years, \_\_\_\_\_ 2003, when I \_\_\_\_\_ (join) this firm. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/see) him \_\_\_\_\_ a few months because he \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the firm two years \_\_\_\_\_.

5. William Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ (be) born about five hundred years \_\_\_\_\_. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) almost five hundred years \_\_\_\_\_ Shakespeare's birth.

6. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) about ten years \_\_\_\_\_ when I \_\_\_\_\_ (start) learning English.

7. —Have you heard from Patricia recently?  
—No. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not/write) to me \_\_\_\_\_ last summer. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/hear) from her \_\_\_\_\_ some time, either. She \_\_\_\_\_ (send) me a postcard from the Bahamas about three months \_\_\_\_\_, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) \_\_\_\_\_ nothing \_\_\_\_\_ then.

—She's lucky! I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/be) to the beach \_\_\_\_\_ ages!

8. Judith \_\_\_\_\_ (be) with us \_\_\_\_\_ nearly five years now.

9. Ten years \_\_\_\_\_ very few people \_\_\_\_\_ (know) much about robotics.

10. She \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Italy ten days .

11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (live) here \_\_\_\_\_ I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) a little girl.

12. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in the restaurant six \_\_\_\_\_ months, \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_ then it \_\_\_\_\_ (close).

## ARTICLES

Indefinite article	Definite article
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ‘<b>a</b>’ is used before ‘half’ when ‘half’ follows a whole number 1 <math>\frac{1}{2}</math> kilos — one and <b>a half</b> kilos or a kilo and a <b>half</b></li> </ul> <p><b>But</b> 1/2 kilo = _____ half a kilo (half doesn’t follow a whole number)</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ‘<b>the</b>’ + singular noun can represent a class of animals or things <i><b>The whale</b> is in danger of extinction. <b>The deepfreeze</b> made life easier for housewives.</i></li> <li>• ‘<b>the</b>’ can be used before a member of a certain group of people (‘<b>the</b>’ + singular noun takes a singular verb) <i><b>The small shopkeeper</b> is finding life increasingly difficult. <b>The first-class</b> traveller pays more so he can expect some comfort</i></li> </ul>

**Exercise 32.** Complete the following sentences with “**the**”, “**a/an**” or **zero** article..

1. \_\_\_\_\_ dolphin is an intelligent animal.
2. It lasted an hour and \_\_\_\_\_ half.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ swan is a large white bird with a long neck.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ tulip has a bell-shaped flower.
5. Who invented \_\_\_\_\_ telescope?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ half of my friends are on holiday at the moment.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ computer allows us to deal with a lot of data very quickly.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ orchid is a beautiful flower.
9. My mother’s favourite flower is \_\_\_\_\_ rose.
10. We just sat and talked for \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour or so.
11. Marconi invented \_\_\_\_\_ radio.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ giraffe is \_\_\_\_\_ tallest animal in \_\_\_\_\_ world.

**Exercise 33.** Complete the following sentences with **a/an**, **the**, or —.

1. What \_\_\_\_\_ lovely weather!
2. He hates \_\_\_\_\_ books he has to read at school.
3. He stayed the night in \_\_\_\_\_ Grand Hotel, which is in \_\_\_\_\_ Brook Street in \_\_\_\_\_ centre of \_\_\_\_\_ Southampton.

4. His ship, \_\_\_\_\_ Queen's Star, sailed next morning down \_\_\_\_\_ English Channel towards \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean.
5. Now he's travelling by \_\_\_\_\_ car across \_\_\_\_\_ United States, along \_\_\_\_\_ Mississippi River and into \_\_\_\_\_ Mexico.
6. I like \_\_\_\_\_ red wine they serve here, and my wife loves \_\_\_\_\_ music.
7. "What was \_\_\_\_\_ highest mountain in \_\_\_\_\_ Hima-  
layas before \_\_\_\_\_ Mount Everest was discovered?"  
—"I don't know."  
—"\_\_\_\_\_ Everest was, of course!"
8. John went to \_\_\_\_\_ prison to visit his brother last Saturday.
9. There was \_\_\_\_\_ man in \_\_\_\_\_ lift.
10. Help yourself to \_\_\_\_\_ glass of wine if you'd like some.
11. Most people enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ show, but I was definitely  
\_\_\_\_\_ one who enjoyed it most.
12. My younger brother still goes to \_\_\_\_\_ school.
13. We have landed men on \_\_\_\_\_ moon.
14. How long does it take on \_\_\_\_\_ train?
15. Greg plays \_\_\_\_\_ piano very well.
16. \_\_\_\_\_ life is very difficult for \_\_\_\_\_ poor.
17. Arthur Brown is \_\_\_\_\_ dentist who lives next door to my par-  
ents.
18. Has anyone seen \_\_\_\_\_ newspaper I left in \_\_\_\_\_ sitting room?
19. Manchester is \_\_\_\_\_ big city in \_\_\_\_\_ north  
of \_\_\_\_\_ England.
20. \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese is certainly \_\_\_\_\_ most difficult  
language I have tried to learn.
21. \_\_\_\_\_ police are looking for \_\_\_\_\_ young man  
aged about 23.
22. Is there \_\_\_\_\_ bookshop in that street?
23. Dad, can I borrow \_\_\_\_\_ car tonight?
24. Only \_\_\_\_\_ rich could afford his firm's products.
25. I have no brothers or sisters. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ only child.

## GRAMMAR IN CONTEXT

**Exercise 34.** Answer the following questions.

1. Do you think that some jobs require people with special characteristics?  
If so, can you give examples?
2. Are there any jobs which you think you would be unsuitable for? If so, why?
3. What sort of job do you think *you* are most suitable for with your personal characteristics?
4. What are the most important aspects of a good job? Put these in order of importance:

- good pay
- being your own boss
- job security
- power
- seeing the results of your work
- your colleagues
- working conditions
- holidays
- flexible hours
- chances of promotion
- job satisfaction
- perks (e.g., corporate car, free lunch)
- opportunity to help people

5. What are the most important things for *you* in your future job?
6. If a job is boring but well-paid, will you ever apply for it?
7. How much money would you like to earn in your job?
8. Which are the three best paid jobs and the three worst paid jobs in your country? Do you think that any of the jobs on the list are overpaid or underpaid in your country?

- nurse in a hospital
- miner
- bank manager
- dentist
- schoolteacher
- factory worker

top professional footballer  
nuclear scientist  
politician  
soldier  
policeman

9. How do you feel in a new group of people? Anxious? Confident?
10. Does a person need to be successful?
11. What is your ambition?

**Exercise 35.** Add some extra information to the sentences below.

*Example:* Liz has got a great new job.

■=> *Extra information:* It's a part-time job in an office quite near her home. It's a well-paid job with six weeks' holiday.

1. To get a good job nowadays is quite a problem.
2. Bob has just sent off an application form.
3. It's the job he has always wanted to do.
4. He thinks he is the right man for a job of a managing director.
5. He has to do well at the interview.
6. The interviewers will be interested in quite a few things.
7. Bob writes down the questions to ask at the end of the interview.
8. Bob is very ambitious.

**Exercise 36.** *Speak about the job you have had or would like to have.*

*Use this language to help you:* My ambition is to ... I'd like to ... I've always wanted to ...

**Exercise 37.** *Role play: "Interview for a job."*

1. Look at the job advertisement in a newspaper.

**SALES MANAGER \$10, 000 plus (annual salary)**

Sleepwell Furniture Limited is a subsidiary of Burton-Taylor the largest bed manufacturers in the U.K. The Company has been recently created and is trading exclusively in the Mail Order market. This is an exciting opportunity to join a new Company at the start of its major expansion plans and requires a self-starter, preferably in the age bracket of 20-30 with drive and ambition. The man or woman selected must be able to quickly demonstrate the ability to take up the appointment of Sales Director and be

ready to participate in a challenging atmosphere generated by a young Management Team.

An attractive basic salary is offered together with a generous profit sharing scheme. A Company car will also be provided. Application Forms may be obtained by writing initially to:

*The Managing Director, Sleepwell Furniture Limited,  
Graig-Well Trading Estate, Panteg.  
A Burton-Taylor Company*

2. Divide the class into two groups: applicants for the job (up to seven students) and interviewers (2-3 students).
3. Each person is given a role card.
4. Each applicant fills in an application form and hands it to the people who are going to interview him/her. While the applicants are filling in their application forms, the interviewers think of various questions to ask the applicants, for example:

Personal background (name, age, place of birth, family etc.)

Education

Work experience

Present job

Salary

Interests/hobbies Health

Reasons for choosing this particular job etc.

5. The applicants are called for the interview one at a time. Finally, the successful applicants are called back into the interview room and offered the job.

### **Interviewers:**

Before you interview an applicant, look through his/her application carefully. Decide what questions you are going to ask, which of you is going to ask which question. Be ready to explain about the job, and say what the person will have to do, etc. During the interview, one interviewer can make notes about the applicants so that it will be easier to decide between them. Here are some things you can make notes about:

Name Appearance

Impression—nervous, confident Speech

Answers to questions Questions asked by ap-

plicants General impression etc.

### Applicants:

Memorize your application form. You must be sure of your personal background. Be ready to say why you applied for the job, and what salary you expect to get. You will have a chance to ask questions. Here are some things you can ask about:

Holidays / Chances of promotion / Pension schemes / Fringe benefits, etc.

APPLICATION FORM	
First name:	Surname:
Address:	
Date of birth:	
Present employment:	
Previous employment:	
Reasons for leaving present job:	
Present salary:	
Hobbies and interests:	
Other information:	
Signature:	
Date:	

### ROLE CARDS:

**Card 1** Lucy Baston or Paul Baston (age: 30)

You are at present Personnel Manager at Wills & Company, an upholstery firm in Oldham. You have had this job for five years. Before this, you worked for an advertising agency in London. You would like a job that is more challenging than your present one, and especially a job which allows you to work 'on your own'. Your interests are golf, driving and antiques. You are engaged and intend to get married at Christmas.

**Card 2** Kate Adams or Nigel Adams (age: 25)

You are at present working for a mail-order firm specialising in garden furniture. You have had this job for two years. Before this, you were a clerk in Lon-

don. You feel your experience in mail-order would be very useful. You don't like your present job because chances for promotion are very few. You would welcome the chance to work for a young, expanding company. Your interests are classical music and art. You like driving. You are single.

**Card 3** Linda Hunt *or* Ken Hunt (age: 35)

You are at present Deputy Manager of G.W. Evans & Co., a large furniture shop in South Wales. You have had this job for eight years. Before this, you were a Sales Representative in West Wales (selling furniture). Although you have no experience in mail-order, you have a lot of experience of selling furniture and have made many useful contacts. You would also like a job that is more exciting and gives a chance to use your own initiative. You are married and have two children. Your interests are golf, gardening and antique furniture.

**Card 4** Laura Jenkins *or* Frank Jenkins (age: 23)

A month ago you graduated from University. You are young, intelligent and have good qualifications, but no work experience. You are very ambitious and keen on a career in business. You are sociable and get on with different people quite well. Your interests are sports, travelling and furniture design. You are single and have no intention to get married in the near future. You can start immediately.

**Card 5** Julia Smith *or* Jack Smith (age: 40)

You have always been self-employed and have run your own business. For many years you have had no paid holidays, sick leaves or other work benefits that people who are employed have. When you saw the advertisement for this job you thought of trying something different. You know how to do business and have very good work experience. You are enthusiastic and initiative. Your hobbies are psychology and foreign languages. You can speak French, Italian, Spanish and a little German. You are married with a daughter.

**Card 6** Edna Graham *or* John Graham (age: 29)

At present you are working as a sales representative for Samsung Company. Though you like your present job, you'd rather have a more lucrative one with good career prospects, more money and responsibility. You have experience in selling different products and find it challenging to gain experience in mail order. In fact, it has always been your ambition to become a leader in a young, expanding company. You have a wide range of interests. You can drive and have a full driving license.

**Card 7** Claire Watson *or* Mike Watson (age 31)

You are working for an advertising agency as a manager. You have to commute to work every day since you live rather far from the agency. It's not cheap and your salary is not high. You would like a well-paid job not far from your home.



You have good qualifications and experience in advertising business. You can't drive a car and your only hobby is writing articles for a local newspaper. You are divorced.

**Card 8** Judy Gladwyn or Peter Gladwyn (age: 45)

You are the Managing Director of Sleepwell Furniture Limited, a company which was created only ten months ago but which is rapidly expanding. It is a mail-order company, based in Wales. You are looking for someone aged 25-30, with drive, energy and enthusiasm. Experience is useful but not essential, as you have your own training programme. But the person must be able to use initiative. The salary of \$ 10000 is negotiable. The man or woman who gets the job must be prepared to start immediately.

**Card 9** Susan Hamilton or Steven Hamilton (age: 32)

You are in charge of advertising for Sleepwell Furniture Limited. You are looking for someone who is young, single, and who has had some experience of either mail-order work or advertising. He or she must also be ambitious, enthusiastic and have a clean driving license. The successful applicant will be expected to help you with advertising.

**Card 10** Doris Stott or Ted Stott (age: 40)

You are the Personnel Manager of Sleepwell Furniture Limited. You are looking for someone who has very good qualifications and experience of either mail-order work or advertising. You insist on employing someone who has broad education and knows how to deal with people. From your own experience you know that middle-aged employees do much better at work than their younger colleagues who haven't enough work experience. Your knowledge of languages would be useful, but not essential. You would like someone married.

### TEST YOURSELF ( UNIT 3 )

#1 There are some mistakes in each of the following sentences. End the mistakes and correct them.

1. All his friends have leave him.
2. You had a letter from you parents, haven't you?
3. We've had a lot of work for last month.
4. Look at Mike! He grew a beard!
5. It's already 10 o'clock and they didn't phone yet.
6. I've left my shopping bag on the train.
7. I can't remember when I've had this watch.
8. An elephant lives in India and Africa.

#2 Choose the best answer A, B, or C.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ football ever since I was a schoolboy.  
A. *enjoyed* B. *have enjoyed* C. *enjoy*
2. Her grandmother's been ill \_\_\_\_\_ years.  
A. *for* B. *since* C. *—*
3. They need an extra two and \_\_\_\_\_ half thousand pounds to complete the project.  
A. *a* B. *—* C. *the*
4. Nobody has been injured in the accident, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. *hasn't anybody* B. *have they* C. *has nobody*
5. She's \_\_\_\_\_ half his age.  
A. *a* B. *—* C. *The*
6. Martin's father died, but his mother is \_\_\_\_\_ alive.  
A. *still* B. *already* C. *yet*
7. Who invented \_\_\_\_\_ wheel?  
A. *the* B. *a* C. *—*
8. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ interested in football.  
A. *hasn't ever been* B. *has never been* C. *is never*
9. I've started learning German but I haven't learned very much \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *any longer* B. *any more* C. *yet*
10. She's \_\_\_\_\_ gone to bed.  
A. *already* B. *still* C. *yet*
11. When \_\_\_\_\_ married?  
A. *did they got* B. *have they got* C. *did they get*
12. — \_\_\_\_\_ have you lived in Moscow? — For two years.  
A. *When* B. *How much* C. *How long*
13. Actually I had dinner with Sue \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. *lately* B. *so far* C. *last night*

## UNIT 4: THE WORLD OF SPORT

### *Focus on*

- *Games and Sports*
- *Fitness*
- *Present Perfect Continuous*
- *Present Perfect Continuous vs. Present Perfect Simple*
- *Relative Clauses (Defining / Non-Defining)*

### **Present perfect continuous**

#### *Usage:*

- to talk about something which started in the past and has been in progress up to the present

*I've been working hard all day. She's been crying.*

— with *for/since*

*I've been learning English for a long time. It's been raining since I got up this morning.*

— with *How long... ?*

*How long have you been waiting?*

- when an action has been in progress up to the recent past and the action has results in the present

*It's been snowing. (It isn't snowing now, but there is snow on the ground.)*

*He's been painting. (He isn't painting now, but there is paint on his clothes.)*

- to talk about repeated actions or situations in a period up to the present (or the recent past)

*I've been having driving lessons for six months.*

*They've been living in Cairo since February.*

NOTE:

Some verbs, e.g., *know, understand, remember, like*, etc. are not used in the continuous form

~~*I've been knowing*~~ him for about a year. => *I've known* him for about a year.

POSITIVE FORM

*have/has been + Participle I (verb +—ing)*

I		<i>have ('ve) been living there for a week.</i>
You		
We		
You		
They		

He		<i>has ('s) been working all day.</i>
She		
It		

**Exercise 1.** Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets in Present Perfect Continuous. (Use the short forms 've/'s been...)

*Example:* We're tired. We've been working (work) all day.

1. John's German is rather fluent. He \_\_\_\_\_ (study) the language for more than 10 years.
2. Sue and her younger brother \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a snowman all morning.
3. I'm tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) tennis all afternoon.
4. The Smiths \_\_\_\_\_ (live) in Stratford for nearly three years now.
5. Why are you so late? We \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) here for ages.
6. It's time to do your homework. You \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) television since 10 o'clock!
7. Jeff \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in his uncle's business since he left school.
8. A friend of mine \_\_\_\_\_ (learn) English for nearly four years, but she still doesn't speak it very well.
9. It \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) all day.
10. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ (repair) his car since early in the morning.

**Exercise 2.** Read the situations and write a sentence with the Present Perfect Continuous.

*Example:* Helen's eyes are red and puffy. (She/cry.) — *She's been crying.*

1. Rocky is hot and tired. (He/run/a marathon.)
2. Tod has a black eye, and Leo has a cut lip. (They/fight.)
3. Greg speaks French like a native. (He/learn French/since childhood.)
4. They are nervous and angry. (They/wait for a bus/for over an hour.)
5. Mr Baxter is one of the best college teachers. (He/teach/here/for twenty years.)
6. We can't drive a car today because of a snowstorm. (It/snow/since morning.)
7. Emma doesn't know the town well enough. (She/live/here/for only a month.)
8. They are good tennis players. (They/play tennis/professionally/for five years.)
9. My feet are killing me. (I/do the shopping/all day.)
10. Martin has bought a new computer. (He/save up money/for three years.)
11. Dave has just come back from the beach. His face is red. (He/lie in the sun.)
12. Philip's hands are dirty. So are his clothes. (He/work/in the garage/all afternoon.)

### NEGATIVE FORM

I  
You  
We  
You  
They

***have not (haven't) been waiting here for over an hour.***

He  
She  
It

***has not (hasn't) been staying there for too long.***

**Exercise 3.** Write negative sentences with the verb in the correct form. (Use the short forms *haven't/hasn't* been...)

*Example:* I don't know Moscow well. I haven't been living (live) here for very long.

1. I must go and see the doctor. I \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) well lately, (feel)
2. George doesn't look very tired. I think, he \_\_\_\_\_ (work) too hard.
3. Kevin and Angela \_\_\_\_\_ (talk) to each other for more than a week.

4. There's no need to apologise. We \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) here for hours.
5. "Are your children busy? "—"No, it's their day off, and they \_\_\_\_\_ (do) anything special all day."
6. Unfortunately, I can't play the piano as well as I used to.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ (practise) it for over five years.
7. Bob is giving a birthday party next week, but he hasn't invited his elder sister. They \_\_\_\_\_ (get) along lately.
8. Everybody here is longing for some sunshine because it's spring already but the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (shine) for months.
9. I'll go to bed early tonight because I feel run-down: I \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) well for quite a while.
10. Sonya \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) television since morning.

### GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b>Have</b>	<div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px; display: inline-block;"> I you we you they </div>	<b>been watching</b> TV since 2 o'clock? – Yes, / (No,)	<div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px; display: inline-block;"> you I you we they </div>	<b>have(n't).</b>
-------------	--	---	--	-------------------

<b>Has</b>	<div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px; display: inline-block;"> he she it </div>	<b>been doing</b> well lately? – Yes, / (No,)	<div style="border-left: 1px solid black; border-right: 1px solid black; padding: 0 5px; display: inline-block;"> he she it </div>	<b>has(n't).</b>
------------	--	---	--	------------------

**Exercise 4.** Make these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*Example:* We've been learning English for two years.

*Have you been learning English for two years?—Yes, we have.*

It hasn't been snowing for a long time.

*Has it been snowing for a long time?—No, it hasn't.*

1. I've been thinking it over all night.
2. He hasn't been sleeping for ten hours.
3. Alan has been writing letters since breakfast.
4. They've been waving good-bye for the last half hour.
5. We've been doing nothing to help him.
6. Emma has been playing chess almost all her life.
7. Bill hasn't been taking photos for years.
8. I've been taking singing lessons recently.

9. The Lloyds haven't been living here for a long time.
10. Ann's son has been practising the piano for two hours.
11. I've been listening to classical music today.
12. Fred hasn't been reading the paper since 5 o'clock.

**Exercise 5.** Rewrite each sentence as positive, negative, or a general question according to the instructions. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example:* She's been reading a fascinating novel. (Negative)

*She hasn't been reading a fascinating novel.*

It hasn't been raining since 6 am. (Positive)

*It's been raining since 6 am.*

The children have been playing in the park all afternoon. (Question)

*Have the children been playing in the park all afternoon?*

1. She's been arguing with her boyfriend. (Negative)
2. I haven't been collecting stamps for quite a few years. (Positive)
3. He's been watching a sad show on TV. (Question)
4. That actress has been starring in movies for quite a few years. (Negative)
5. The paparazzi haven't been bothering that famous singer all day. (Positive)
6. We've been riding our bikes for miles! (Question)
7. A friend of mine has been looking for a job for about a year. (Negative)
8. It hasn't been snowing for almost a month. (Positive)
9. Kevin's been getting ready for his exams for weeks. (Question)
10. My parents have been doing up the flat all summer. (Negative)
11. Most of us haven't been studying English for quite a while. (Positive)
12. We've been trying to work out a compromise since Monday. (Question)

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

<b>Have</b>	I you we you they	<b><i>been talking with Sam or his twin brother? – I think, it was Tom.</i></b>
-------------	-------------------------------	---

<b>Has</b>	he she it	<b><i>been working since Monday or Tuesday? – Since Tuesday.</i></b>
------------	-----------------	--

**Exercise 6.** Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.

*Example:* He/learn/Italian/Spanish/since last year?

*Has he been learning Italian or Spanish since last year?*

*— (He's been learning) Spanish.*

1. They/live/in Scotland/for some years/all their life?
2. Your brother/play/football/hockey/since he was 7?
3. Helen/jog in the park/do aerobics in the gym?
4. You/collect stamps/postcards/all this time?
5. Jack/work/flexitime/regular hours/late?
6. Sally and her friend/take classes/in painting/in singing?
7. She/read/a romantic novel/a detective story/all night?
8. The children/lie/swim/in the pool/in the sea/all day?
9. Jack's family/live/in the city centre/in the suburbs?
10. Your father/work/as a restaurant manager/as a waiter?
11. It/rain/since yesterday/early morning?
12. You/stay in a hotel/with your relatives/since you arrived here?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

<b>What</b>	<b>have</b>	you	<b>been</b>	<b>doing</b> there? — <i>I've been waiting for Tom.</i>
<b>Where</b>	<b>have</b>	you	<b>been</b>	<b>swimming</b> ? — <i>In the pool.</i>
<b>Why</b>	<b>has</b>	he	<b>been</b>	<b>working</b> so hard lately? — <i>He's having an exam next week.</i>
<b>What kind of book</b>	<b>has</b>	she	<b>been</b>	<b>reading</b> ? — <i>A detective.</i>
<b>How long</b>	<b>has</b>	it	<b>been</b>	<b>snowing</b> ? — <i>For about two days.</i>
<b>Whose lectures</b>	<b>have</b>	we	<b>been</b>	<b>listening</b> to? — <i>Professor Smith's lectures.</i>
<b>Which subjects</b>	<b>have</b>	they	<b>been</b>	<b>learning</b> since they entered the Institute? — <i>Physics, Mathematics, Chemistry, Computer Science, Languages and many others.</i>

### OBJECT QUESTIONS

<b>Who</b>	<b>has</b>	she	<b>been</b>	<b>talking</b> with? — <i>With her Literature teacher.</i>
<b>What</b>	<b>have</b>	you	<b>been</b>	<b>collecting</b> since your childhood? — <i>National flags.</i>



## SUBJECT QUESTIONS

**Who** has --- **been** **working** with you in Moscow? – *Kate's brother.*

**Exercise 7.** Complete these conversations using the words in brackets and Present Perfect Continuous.

*Example:* A: (What/Tom/do) *What has Tom been doing?*

B: (talk on the phone) *He's been talking on the phone.*

A: (Who/he/talk to) *Who has he been talking to?*

B: (talk to Olga) *He's been talking to Olga.*

1. A: (What/the kids/do) \_\_\_\_\_ in their room?  
B: (play computer games) \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: (How long/they/play) \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: (all evening) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A: (What/you/do) \_\_\_\_\_ since lunch?  
B: (write a letter) \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: (Who/you/write to) \_\_\_\_\_.  
B: (write to tutor) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A: (Where/she/work) \_\_\_\_\_ for the last three years.  
B: (in London) \_\_\_\_\_.  
A: (Which company/she/work for) \_\_\_\_\_?  
B: (for Coca-Cola) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 8.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

*Example:* They've *been playing basketball* for almost an hour.

*What have they been doing for almost an hour?*

1. She's been doing *this* course for half a year.
2. They've been painting the walls *in their new flat*.
3. Pam's been helping *her mother* about the house since she was little.
4. His sister has been taking *dancing* classes.
5. I've been studying *applied mathematics* since I left school.
6. Miss Startley has been working *for Starbucks* for two years.
7. He's been redecorating *his brother's* room all week.
8. The children have been playing in the street *because their mother has lost the key to the front door*.
9. He's been living *in his own flat* for a year.
10. My mother has been reading a *historical* novel.
11. *I've been waiting* here for hours.

12. *Our* distant relatives have been staying with us for quite a while!
13. We've been playing *tennis* since 10 am.
14. John has been having a *motoring* holiday with his family.

**Exercise 9.** Write questions with ***How long...?***

*Example:* It's snowing. — *How long has it been snowing?*

1. My grandparents are living in the country.
2. Kate and Greg are looking for a flat.
3. It's raining.
4. Denis teaches English in Italy.
5. Julia's cousin is studying Machine Learning at University.
6. My elder brother is serving in the army.
7. They are waiting for us at the railway station.
8. He is preparing for tomorrow's English class.
9. Tim collects badges.
10. A friend of mine drives a BMW.
11. Nick is working as a clerk for a small company in Moscow.
12. I'm learning Spanish.

**Exercise 10.** Ask subject or object questions. Give short answers to subject questions.

*Example:* *Julia* has been talking on the phone with a *friend of hers* for half an hour.

*Who has been talking on the phone for half an hour?—Julia has.*

*Who has Julia been talking with on the phone?—With a friend of hers.*

1. *We*'ve been using *this computer* for three years.
2. *They*'ve been waiting for *the teacher* since the lesson started.
3. *The children* have been playing *games* since they came from school.
4. *I*'ve been having a really good time with *my friends* in the country.
5. *Mr. Taylor* has been looking for a *new job* for six months.
6. *Professor Bonnet* has been working on *molecules of this type* for many years.
7. *I*'ve been looking after *Mrs Brown's children* for a week.
8. *Peter* has been looking through *his email* since breakfast.
9. *We*'ve been longing for *some sunshine* since Indian Summer.
10. *They*'ve been thinking about *this issue* since Wednesday.
11. *The secretary* has been writing *letters* all day.
12. *We*'ve been trying to get in touch with *Molly* every night over the past week.

## TAG QUESTIONS

I		I
You		you
We	<i>have ('ve) been studying</i> English for a year, <i>haven't</i>	we ? – Yes,/(No,)... <i>have(n't)</i> .
You		you
They		they

He		he
She	<i>has ('s) been working</i> rather badly, <i>hasn't</i>	she ? – Yes, / (No,) ... <i>has(n't)</i> .
It		it

I		I
You		you
We	<i>have not (haven't) been studying</i> English for a year, <i>have</i>	we?Yes,/(No,)... <i>have(n't)</i> .
You		you
They		they

He		he
She	<i>has not (hasn't) been staying</i> there for ages, <i>has</i>	she ? – Yes, / (No,) ... <i>has(n't)</i> .
It		it

**Exercise 11.** Give the right tag to these sentences.

1. Julia's been thinking up new ways of raising money, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. You haven't been overworking, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. We've been dealing with the same firm for years, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. They haven't been trying to solve the problem, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Sue's been travelling for a month now, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Laura hasn't been doing well this year, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. I've been thinking about the lovely holiday we had last year,  
\_\_\_\_\_?
8. Sue and Pat haven't been living here for twenty-five years,  
\_\_\_\_\_?
9. I hope you've been telling me the truth, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. You haven't been running, \_\_\_\_\_?
11. Your brother's only been working here for a few days,  
\_\_\_\_\_?
12. We've been walking all day, \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Exercise 12.** What have you been doing? Complete each sentence with a personal example. Use Present Perfect Continuous.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ since I was a child.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ all my life.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_ years.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ since I left school.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ for ten minutes.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ since I started learning English.

### PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS VS PRESENT PERFECT SIMPLE

Present Perfect Continuous	Present Perfect Simple
<p>is used:</p> <p>1) to talk about how someone has been spending time and <u>the final achievement is NOT important</u> (the action may be finished or not finished)  <i>I've <b>been running</b> all morning.</i>  <i>How long have you <b>been having</b> driving lessons?</i></p>	<p>is used:</p> <p>1) when the action is finished and <u>the final achievement is important</u>  <i>I've <b>run</b> six kilometres so far this morning. How many driving lessons have you <b>had</b>?</i></p>
<p>2) for situations which are more <u>temporary</u> (continuing for a short time)*  <i>He's <b>been living</b> there for a week.</i>  <i>I've <b>been working</b> very hard recently.</i></p>	<p>2) for situations which are more <u>permanent</u> (continuing for a longer time)*  <i>He's always <b>lived</b> there. You've <b>worked</b> hard all your life.</i></p>
	<p>3) with verbs not used in the continuous tense  <i>I've <b>known</b> him for ten years.</i>  <i>They've <b>always had</b> a big garden.</i>  <i>He's <b>been</b> in hospital since his accident.</i></p>

\* Sometimes there is only a small difference in meaning between the two forms.  
*I've **been working**/I've **worked** for the company for ten years.*

**Exercise 13.** Read the situations and write two sentences using the words in brackets.

*Example:* Steve started reading a novel an hour ago. He is still reading it and he is on page 45.

(read/for an hour) *He's **been reading** for an hour.*

(read/45 pages so far) *He's **read** 45 pages so far.*

1. When they left college, Sophie and Amy started making films together.  
They still make films.  
(make/films/since they left college)  
(make/six films/since they left college)
2. Robin started his company three years ago when he moved to Boston. He's still running it.  
(own/this company/for three years)  
(run/his company/since he moved to Boston)
3. Dorin is writing an essay. She began writing it three hours ago. She's still working on her essay.  
(work on her essay/for three hours)  
(not finish it/yet)
4. Edward is building a new country cottage. It is still under construction.  
(build/his country cottage/for a month)  
(build/one storey/so far)
5. The job is well-paid. But Chuck doesn't like it. He finds it too boring. He needs a new job.  
(do/the same job/for too long)  
(not apply/for another job/so far)
6. It's a formal party, so Walter has to wear a tuxedo. He looks very ridiculous.  
(never/wear a tuxedo/before)  
(wear/casual clothes/all life)
7. It's a 3-mile walk from Sam's house to the city centre. He started an hour ago and has just reached it.  
(walk/to the city-centre/for an hour)  
(walk/3 miles)
8. Laura started the washing machine up an hour ago. There are now 30 clean shirts in the basket.  
(wash/30 shirts)  
(wash/for an hour)
9. The tourist came into the old town an hour ago. He is leaving now with 60 new photographs.  
(take/60 photographs/so far) (take/photographs/for an hour)
10. The typist started two hours ago. Six letters are ready now.  
(type/six letters)  
(type/for two hours)

**Exercise 15.** Complete the questions. Use Present Perfect Simple or Present Perfect Continuous.

*Example:* I've saved some money.

How much *have you saved*?

How long *have you been saving*?

1. We're looking for a flat.  
How many flats \_\_\_\_\_?  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Sally is doing her homework  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?  
How much homework \_\_\_\_\_?
3. They are playing tennis.  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?  
How many games \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Polly is reading a novel.  
How many chapters \_\_\_\_\_?  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?
5. The Greens are shopping.  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?  
How many things \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Pete is riding a bike.  
How many kilometres \_\_\_\_\_?  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?
7. Julia and Annie are doing some housework.  
How much housework \_\_\_\_\_?  
How long \_\_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 16.** Present Perfect Simple or Present Perfect Continuous?  
Choose the best answer A or B.

1. She's \_\_\_\_\_ her purse.  
*A. lost* *B. been losing*
2. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the chocolates! They're nearly all gone!  
*A. has eaten* *B. has been eating*
3. I've \_\_\_\_\_ for you for ages! Where have you been?  
*A. waited* *B. have been waiting*

4. He's \_\_\_\_\_ his father's car. He's in despair.  
A. *crashed* B. *been crashing*
5. How many exercises \_\_\_\_\_ today?  
A. *have you done* B. *have you been doing*
6. "Why are you so hot?" – "I've \_\_\_\_\_ squash."  
A. *played* B. *been playing*
7. I've \_\_\_\_\_ a better book in my life.  
A. *never read* B. *never been reading*
8. How long have you \_\_\_\_\_ Julia and Tim?  
A. *known* B. *been knowing*
9. They've \_\_\_\_\_ the bedroom for a week. They'll finish it soon.  
A. *painted* B. *been painting*
10. He's \_\_\_\_\_ the washing machine. He finished last night.  
A. *fixed* B. *been fixing*
11. I don't know what our neighbours doing. They've \_\_\_\_\_ a row all day.  
A. *had* B. *been having*
12. They've \_\_\_\_\_ five rows so far this week.  
A. *had* B. *been having*
13. I'm exhausted. I've \_\_\_\_\_ all day.  
A. *worked* B. *been working*
14. I've \_\_\_\_\_ visited a lot of countries over the past few years.  
A. *visited* B. *been visiting*

**Exercise 17.** Put the verbs in brackets in Present Perfect Simple or Present Perfect Continuous.

*Example:* They have been repairing (repair) the road all this week, but they haven't finished it yet. I'm sorry I've broken (break) your pen.

1. Sally \_\_\_\_\_ (save) nearly two thousand pounds so far this year.
2. What's the matter? \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) something?
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in music industry.
4. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) my chocolates. There aren't many left.
5. My younger brother \_\_\_\_\_ (grow) three centimetres this month.

6. I \_\_\_\_\_ (break) my leg twice in two years.
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ (put) up their tent for over an hour now, and they still haven't finished.
8. Can you translate this note from Paris? I understood French when I was a child, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) it all.
9. Your English is rather good. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (study) it long?
10. Do you mind if I clean the table? \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (have) enough to eat?
11. I'm not surprised he \_\_\_\_\_ (fail) his exam. He \_\_\_\_\_ (not/work) hard recently.
12. How many times \_\_\_\_\_ Frank \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late for work this week?
13. Let's give that cat some food. It \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on the doorstep for hours. I'm sure it's starving.
14. (do) grammar exercises all morning. I deserve a treat for lunch.
15. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (not/buy) your mother a present? That's really mean of you!
16. I saw Helen yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ (work) in Canada for the past year. Did you know?
17. Where are my keys? This is the third time I \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) them today.
18. Oh, do be quiet. You \_\_\_\_\_ (argue) all day!

**Exercise 18.** Complete the dialogue putting the verbs in Present Perfect Simple or the Present Perfect Continuous.

Joe: Gosh, it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) busy this morning, hasn't it?

Liza: Yes, you look exhausted. What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ (do)?

Joe: I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/stop) all morning. I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) letters, \_\_\_\_\_ (answer) the phone, \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the filing... it \_\_\_\_\_ (be) impossible.

Liza: It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the same for me. My phone \_\_\_\_\_ (ring) all morning, I \_\_\_\_\_ (write) five letters... and I \_\_\_\_\_ (interview) three people for that secretarial job.

Joe: Have you? Oh, I \_\_\_\_\_ (interview) one as well. And I \_\_\_\_\_ (send) off another ten application forms to people who want them. It is very popular.

Liza: It is, isn't it? I can't think why. Four people \_\_\_\_\_ (phone) me about it this morning.

Joe: Have they?... Oh, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) through that letter, you know, the one the managing director sent to all the staff...

Liza: Oh, yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ (already/read) that. Not very interesting, is it?

Joe: No... I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (read) it all before...



## RELATIVE CLAUSES (Defining/Non-Defining)

Defining Relative Clauses	Non- Defining Relative Clauses
<p>These clauses identify nouns and tell us which person, thing, etc. the speaker means.</p> <p><i>He spoke to the woman <b>who owns the hotel</b>.</i>  <b>(who owns the hotel</b> tells us which woman)</p> <p><i>The house <b>which Sue has bought</b> is over 100 years.</i>  <b>(which Sue has bought</b> tells us which house)</p>	<p>These clauses do not tell us which person, thing, etc. the speaker means; these clauses give more information about a person or thing already identified.</p> <p><i>Greg's mother, <b>who is 53</b>, has just passed her driving test.</i>  <b>(who is 53</b> does not tell us which woman; we already know that she is Greg's mother)</p> <p><i>Kate's house, <b>which is in the centre of town</b>, is over 100 years old.</i>  <b>(which is in the centre of town</b> does not tell us which house; we already know that it is Kate's house)</p>
<p>We use <b>who</b> (for people), <b>which</b> (for things) in relative clauses.</p>	
<p><b>that</b> is used for both people and things in defining clauses</p>	<p><b>that</b> is NEVER used in non-defining clauses</p>
<p>1. We <u>cannot</u> leave out <u>subject</u> relative pronouns.  <i>Have you heard about the earthquake <b>which/that</b> occurred in Japan?</i></p> <p>2. We <u>can</u> leave out <u>object</u> relative pronouns.  <i>I always return the money _____ <b>I borrow from my friends</b>.</i></p>	<p>1. We <u>cannot</u> leave out relative pronouns.  <i>My aunt Amy, <b>who lives in Liverpool</b>, is coming to see me next week.</i>  <i>He gave me the keys, <b>which I put in my pocket</b>.</i></p> <p>!!! <u>When we write these clauses, we put commas (,).</u></p>

**Exercise 19.** In the sentences provided below, decide which of the clauses are non-defining? Add commas (,) where necessary.

*Example:* Peter's relatives, who are both retired, now live in Portugal. — *non-defining*

Greg has just returned from a study tour \_\_\_\_\_ which his university arranged.—*defining*

1. The people \_\_\_\_\_ who live next door \_\_\_\_\_ helped us move the furniture.
2. There's a small shop \_\_\_\_\_ which sells food and drinks.
3. The young men \_\_\_\_\_ who we met at yesterday's meeting \_\_\_\_\_ were all from Holland.
4. Have you still got the money \_\_\_\_\_ which I gave you?
5. The doctor \_\_\_\_\_ who examined the sick child \_\_\_\_\_ was very gentle.
6. Tom's sister \_\_\_\_\_ who I've known for years \_\_\_\_\_ is a very nice person.
7. We saw Olga last night with that man \_\_\_\_\_ who \_\_\_\_\_ works in the library.
8. The police caught the burglar \_\_\_\_\_ who broke into Mr. Smith's apartment last week.
9. Sydney \_\_\_\_\_ which has a population of more than three million \_\_\_\_\_ is Australia's largest city.
10. The term paper \_\_\_\_\_ which Richard is now writing \_\_\_\_\_ touches some problems of genetic engineering.
11. Hawaii \_\_\_\_\_ which consists of eight principal islands \_\_\_\_\_ is a favourite vacation spot.
12. This is Ivan Fallon \_\_\_\_\_ who has been working for the Sunday Times for some years.
13. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ who wasn't feeling very hungry \_\_\_\_\_ didn't want to go to the restaurant.
14. Is that the same song \_\_\_\_\_ which we heard yesterday?

### **WHO, WHICH, THAT as subjects of a defining relative clause**

We use **who, which, that** in place of noun subjects or pronoun subjects (*I, you, he, etc.*) and we cannot leave them out.

*I thanked the girl. **She** helped me.*                      =>    *I thanked the girl **who** helped me.*

*The car is mine. **It** is in front of the house.*                      =>    *The car **which** is in front of the house is mine.*

*Did you see the letters ? **They** came yesterday.*                      =>    *Did you see the letters **that** came yesterday?*

*who helped me* / *which is in front of the house* / *that came yesterday* are defining relative clauses. They tell us which person or thing the speaker means.

— **Who** is used for people

*I spoke to the woman. **She** runs this hotel.*

=> *I spoke to the woman **who** runs this hotel.*

— **Which** is used for things

*The keys have disappeared. **They** were on this table. => The keys **which** were on the table have disappeared.*

— **That** is used for both things and people in an informal style

*I spoke to the woman **that** runs this hotel.*

*The keys **that** were on the table have disappeared.*

**Exercise 20.** Combine the two sentences using **who** for people and **which** for things.

*Example:* The man is happy. He has won the race.

*The man who has won the race is happy.*

What has happened to the money? It was on my desk.

*What has happened to the money which was on my desk?*

1. There is a small town in Sweden. It has an unusual hotel.
2. It's the hotel. It is built from ice.
3. Nils Bergqvist is the man. He runs the ARTic Hall Hotel.
4. The 800 people have stayed at the hotel this winter. They liked it.
5. This is one of the ten ice rooms. It will cost you about £30 a night.
6. Quite a few people take part in the annual contest. They try to predict the day when the ice hotel will fall.
7. The person guessed the day correctly last year. He received a large painting from an ARTic Hall exhibition.
8. Nils is excited about a new ice hotel. It will be bigger and better.
9. She's the person. She gives me a lift to work every day.
10. The man wasn't English. He spoke to us.
11. What's the name of the girl? She telephoned you.
12. The student is from the Ukraine. He is sitting next to me.
13. The taxi driver was friendly. He took me to the airport.
14. He's the man. He fixed my car.

## WHO(M)\*, WHICH, THAT as objects of a defining relative clause

We use **who(m)**, **which**, **that** in place of noun objects or object pronouns (*me, you, him, etc.*) and we can leave them out.

The woman was Mrs Elton. I met **her**. => he woman **(who)** I met was Mrs Elton.

The play wasn't bad. We saw **it** last night. => The play **(which)** we saw last night wasn't bad.

Have you seen the books? I put **them** on this table. => Have you seen the books **(that)** I put on this table?

— **Who** is used for people

Helen is the girl. We met her at the party. => Helen is the girl **(who)** we met at the party.

— **Which** is used for things

What is the name of this company? You're working for it. => What is the name of the company **(which)** you're working for?

—**That** is used for both people and things

Helen is the girl (that) we met at the party.

What is the name of the company (that) you're working for?

NOTE:

**Whom** is quite formal and not very common in everyday speech.

**Exercise 21.** Are the relative pronoun the subjects or the objects in the relative clauses?

*Example:* That's the cat which I photographed.—**which** is the object  
Kate is the girl who invited me to the theatre.—**who** is the subject

1. I've lost that nice notebook which Anthony gave me.
2. That's the woman who I wanted to see.
3. An orphan is a child who hasn't got any parents.
4. They never thanked me for the postcard that I sent them.
5. It's a book that everybody talks about and nobody reads.
6. She's always telling you things which you already know.
7. That's the boy who lives next door.
8. Our tutor is a person who I really respect.

9. Once there were old trees that grew in our park.
  10. He had a simple idea which changed the world.
  11. The paintings which Paul hangs on the hotel walls are for sale.
  12. John Murray is the man who owns the Grand Hotel.
- Select the sentences in which the relative pronoun is the object and rewrite them without **who**, **which**, or **that**.

**Exercise 22.** Change **who/which** to **that**, or leave it out, if possible.

1. I've had a card from Brian who used to live next door.
2. Do you remember those people who we met in Paris?
3. They live in a small village which has 100 inhabitants.
4. We had some good advice from Mr Richards who we consulted about investments.
5. What happened to the biscuits which I bought yesterday?
6. This is Mrs. Irvin who works with my father.
7. I like films which have a beginning, a middle and an end—in that order.
8. Dana married a nice man who she met on a bus.
9. I lent him an English book which is really easy to read.
10. Are these all the letters which came in this morning's post?
11. The man who we spoke to wasn't very nice.
12. I don't like films which are violent.

**Exercise 23.** Make each pair of the sentences into one sentence. Don't use **who**, **which**, or **that**.

*Example:* My brother bought a motorbike last month. The motorbike has broken down three times already. (The motorbike...)

*The motorbike my brother bought last month has broken down three times already.*

1. You recommended a musical. We went to see the musical, but we didn't think much of it. (We went...)
2. Peter wrote an essay while we were on holiday. The essay has won a prize in the college competition. (The essay...)
3. You didn't recognise an actress on television last night. The actress was Jodie Foster. (The actress...)
4. Their daughter brings friends home. Some of the friends look much older than her. (Some of...)
5. You asked me to get you the latest issue of the Sunday Times. Here's the paper. (Here's...)

6. We moved into a new house. It is absolutely beautiful. (The house...)
7. Cindy joined a Fitness Centre. It's the best in the city. (The Fitness Centre...)
8. They interviewed a twelve-year-old girl from Georgia. She is a chess player. (The girl...)

**Exercise 24.** Put in the right relative pronouns only where necessary.

Neil Weston owns three summer cottages \_\_\_\_\_ he rents out to visitors. There are people \_\_\_\_\_ return every year but many visitors, however, are less than satisfactory. The cleaners \_\_\_\_\_ go into the cottages at the end of the week are often shocked. They find hair dye \_\_\_\_\_ adults have left on bathroom walls; drawings \_\_\_\_\_ bored children have put on bedroom walls; kettles \_\_\_\_\_ smell because visitors have boiled fish in them. There are people \_\_\_\_\_ spill a mug of coffee on the carpet and leave it there, and others \_\_\_\_\_ leave breadboards on hot cooker rings. They do not report televisions \_\_\_\_\_ are broken or glasses \_\_\_\_\_ they have smashed. One family even took home a temperature knob \_\_\_\_\_ only fits one particular make of cooker. At the end of each week, Mr Weston and his wife search for spoons \_\_\_\_\_ guests have dropped in the dustbins and check cushions \_\_\_\_\_ they have turned round to hide the food stains.

### WHICH and WHO(M) + prepositions

- in defining relative clauses

*That's the town in which he was born.*

*The people with whom I stayed were very kind.*

#### NOTE:

In everyday speech, the preposition is put at the end of the clause and the relative pronoun *which, who, that* are usually left out.

That's the town *he was born in.*

The people *I stayed with were very kind.*

- in non-defining relative clause (formal style)

*She's studying chemistry, about which I know very little.*

*Mr and Mrs Johnson, with whom we went on holiday, live in Bristol.*

NOTE:

In everyday speech, it is more usual to put the preposition at the end of the clause and to use **who** instead of **whom**

She's studying chemistry, **which I** know very little **about**.

Mr and Mrs Johnson, **who** we went on holiday **with**, live in Bristol.

**Exercise 25.** Join each pair of sentences without using **who**, **whom**, or **which**.

*Example:* The restaurant was in South Street. We went to it.

*The restaurant we went to was in South Street.*

The woman is a good friend of my mother's. I borrowed the money from her.

*The woman I borrowed the money from is a good friend of my mother's.*

1. The man is Jack's cousin. I introduced you to him.
2. The hotel overlooked the sea. We stayed at it.
3. The shop is closed. I bought the trousers from it.
4. The people like him very much. He works with them.
5. The school was experimental. I went to it.
6. The lecture was informative and rather interesting. We listened to it.
7. The job was challenging and well-paid. I applied for it.
8. The woman is a qualified football referee. He got acquainted with her.
9. The student is a tennis champion. I study with him.
10. The girl is my close friend. Pete is engaged to her.

**Exercise 26.** Join each pair of sentences using **who**, **which** and a **preposition**.

*Example:* Mr Black is a reader at Kate's university. I was talking to him a moment ago.

*Mr Black, **who** I was talking to a moment ago, is a reader at Kate's university.*

1. Mrs Mason apologised for the mistake. We complained to her.
2. The film *Wild Life* is showing next week. I've heard good reports about it.
3. Mr Ross is the president of a very large international company. We've just run into him.
4. Kevin Slob is now a film star. I used to study with him at university.
5. Our new manager has completely reorganised the office. You are looking at him.
6. My friend is a promising businessman. We are waiting for him.
7. The shop on Elm Street is closed tomorrow. We usually pass it by.
8. His boss will be returning tomorrow. You've heard of him a lot.

## WHOSE / WHERE / WHEN / WHY in defining and non-defining relative clauses

- **Whose** means *of who* and replaces *his*, *her*, and *their* in defining relative clauses. It can never be left out.

*I've got a friend. Her sister is an actress. => I've got a friend whose sister is an actress.*

### NOTE:

the difference between **whose** and **who's** (**who is** or **who has**):

*She's the one who's lending us the money, (who's lending = who is lending).*

- **Where** means *in which* and is used to talk about places. It can be used to introduce defining and non-defining relative clauses:

*We visited the town where I was born. (Defining)*

*I bought them at the supermarket, where I met Mrs Butler. (Non-defining)*

- **When** is used for times in relative clauses. It can be used to introduce defining and non-defining relative clauses.

*I think that was the time when I lost all my money. (Defining)*

*I saw the film last year, when I was in London. (Non-defining)*

- **Why** is used after the word *reason* in defining relative clauses. It can be left out.

*Is there a reason why you want to leave now?*

*Is there a reason you want to leave now?*

### **Exercise 27.** Answer the questions using **whose**.

*Example: Who's Mr Green? (His wife teaches at my daughter's school.)*

*Mr Green is the man whose wife teaches at my daughter's school.*

1. Who's Kate Brown? (Her sister lives next door.)
2. Who are Mr and Mrs Simpson? (Their elder son works for IBM.)
3. Who's that girl? (Her mother is a famous actress.)
4. Who are you? (My mother phoned the police.)
5. Who is the girl in the red? (Her husband bought a luxurious house last month.)
6. Who are they? (Their children won the tennis tournament.)
7. Who's Julia Barnes? (Her brother had a car accident last week.)
8. Who's the man in the photo? (His friend is my sister's boyfriend.)



**Exercise 28.** Express each pair of sentence as one, using **whose** or **who's**.

*Example:* There's the lady. Her dog died some days ago.

*There's the lady whose dog died some days ago.*

That's the man. He's going to buy the company.

*That's the man who's going to buy the company.*

1. She's the new doctor. She's coming to the hospital next month.
2. She's the journalist. Her article was on the front page of the Times.
3. They're the people. Their shop burnt down last week.
4. That's the sales director. He's leaving in March.
5. That's the student. Her parents complained about the school.
6. She's the singer. She's just signed a contract with a recording company.
7. He's the person. He's going to retire.
8. She's the person. She's working for the film studios.
9. That's the sportsman. He's just won the competition.
10. That's the boy. He's just got the place at university.

**Exercise 29.** Complete the sentences using **where**, **when**, or **why**.

*Example:* That's the church **where** Tom and Sally were married.

I bought a rare book in August, **when** I was in France.

Did they tell you the reason **why** they were late?

1. Did they tell you the reason \_\_\_\_\_ they wanted to leave the country?
2. What's the name of the restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ you had lunch?
3. I listen to music late at night, \_\_\_\_\_ the children have gone to bed.
4. Is that the hospital \_\_\_\_\_ you had your operation?
5. I don't understand the reason \_\_\_\_\_ he was so rude?
6. Do you remember the time \_\_\_\_\_ your car broke down on the motorway?
7. The building \_\_\_\_\_ I work has no proper air-conditioning.
8. Can you give me one good reason \_\_\_\_\_ I must lend you the money?
9. Is there a good time \_\_\_\_\_ I can phone you?
10. I went to the part of the beach \_\_\_\_\_ I lost my watch, but I couldn't find it.
11. That's the hotel \_\_\_\_\_ my sister spent her honeymoon.
12. There must be a reason \_\_\_\_\_ you said that.

## ARTICLES (REVIEW)

**Exercise 30.** Complete the story with *a/an, the*, or *–*.

Boxing matches were very popular in \_\_\_\_\_ Great Britain two hundred years ago. In those days, \_\_\_\_\_ boxers fought with bare fists for \_\_\_\_\_ prize money. Because of this, they were known as \_\_\_\_\_ ‘prizefighters’. However, boxing was very violent, for there were no rules.

One of \_\_\_\_\_ most colourful figures in \_\_\_\_\_ boxing history was Daniel Mendoza, who was born in 1764. Though he was technically \_\_\_\_\_ prizefighter, Mendoza did much to change violent prizefighting into \_\_\_\_\_ sport, for he brought science to \_\_\_\_\_ game. In his day, Mendoza enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ tremendous popularity.

Daniel became famous after \_\_\_\_\_ boxing match when he was only fourteen years old. This attracted \_\_\_\_\_ attention of Richard Humphries who was then \_\_\_\_\_ most eminent boxer in \_\_\_\_\_ England. He offered to train Mendoza and his young pupil was quick to learn. In fact, Mendoza soon became so successful that Humphries turned against him. \_\_\_\_\_ two men quarrelled bitterly and it was clear that \_\_\_\_\_ argument could only be settled by \_\_\_\_\_ fight. \_\_\_\_\_ match took place at Shilton where \_\_\_\_\_ both men fought for \_\_\_\_\_ hour. \_\_\_\_\_ public bet \_\_\_\_\_ lot of money on Mendoza, but Humphries defeated him. Mendoza met Humphries in \_\_\_\_\_ ring on a later occasion and he lost for \_\_\_\_\_ second time. He managed to beat Humphries only in 1790 and became Champion of \_\_\_\_\_ England. Meanwhile, he founded \_\_\_\_\_ highly successful Academy and even Lord Byron became one of his pupils. He earned \_\_\_\_\_ enormous sums of money. Despite this, he was such \_\_\_\_\_ extravagant person that he was always in debt. Eventually he was sent to \_\_\_\_\_ prison because he failed to pay his debts and died in \_\_\_\_\_ poverty in 1836.

## GRAMMAR IN CONTEXT

**Exercise 31.** Answer the following questions:

1. What sports are you interested in? What do you play? What about indoor games?
2. Are you a football fan? Which team do you support? Why?
3. If you go to the stadium to see a football match, in what way do you encourage your favourite team?
4. What board games did you play as a child, or do you play now?
5. Do you enjoy watching sports on TV? Any particular ones?

6. What is more important for modern people: education, sports or art?
7. Is it necessary for every person to do a sport? Give your reasons.
8. At what age should a child take up sports?
9. Don't you think there's too much sport on TV, radio, and in newspapers?
10. What do you know about unusual and dangerous sports?
11. Does sport really encourage us to participate or does it reduce us to a passive, receptive audience?
12. Do you think sportsmen deserve to be rich and famous? Why? Why not?
13. Is sport merely an outlet for physical aggression? If not, what is it then?
14. What does the proverb "All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy" mean? Is *play* important in modern life? Is it more important than it used to be? What role does it play today? (Think about your personal life, health, politics, etc.)
15. How important is it to take exercise or take part in outdoor activities of some kind? Is there a sport or activity suitable for everyone?
16. Why do you think people play games? Do they enjoy the companionship and sense of physical well-being, or do they play to win and be triumphant?

**Exercise 32.** If you do a sport, describe the sport and briefly explain the rules, without mentioning the name of the sport. See if people can guess which sport you have described.

**Exercise 33.** Describe 1) a board game, 2) a word game, 3) a sports game you know/that you like playing/that is popular among your friends, or youngsters in your country. Include information about the number of players, the basic rules, any equipment you need, and where to play.

**Exercise 34.** Discuss (in the form of general conversation or dialogues) some recent international sport events such as a football match, an ice-hockey match, a tennis tournament, etc.

**Exercise 35.** Agree or disagree.

1. Football as well as many other games is stupid and dangerous.
2. Many kinds of sport are harmful for health.
3. There should exist strict distinction between sports for men and for women.
4. Certain kinds of sport help to develop violence in people.
5. People of the 21<sup>st</sup> century will be able to do without sport.

6. Sport is too commercialized nowadays.
7. Modern systems of education pay too little attention to sports.
8. To play a game is always more difficult than to compete in running, jumping, cycling, etc. In the former case one depends greatly on his opponent. Whereas in the latter case one depends only on oneself.

**Exercise 36.** Speak about.

1. The most popular sports and games among your friends.
2. Your favourite sports and games.
3. The best stadium/sports ground/gym you've ever seen.
4. Sport activities in your family.
5. The most important sports events in your country.
6. Sport fans in your country.
7. Your favourite athlete.
8. A competition/tournament/match, etc. you've recently seen.

**Exercise 37.** You are a sociologist. You want to get some information about people's opinion about sports.

Make a list of questions you are going to ask. Address as many people as possible, analyse the answers and speak of the results you have obtained. Use the following phrases:

Most people/the majority of people/over 50% of people claim that...

All people are equally fond of...

Nobody mentioned...

### TEST YOURSELF (UNIT 4)

**#1** Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the word given and other words to complete each sentence. You must use between two and five words. Do not change the word given.

1. I lost interest in the subject when the teacher didn't answer my questions.

**put**

When the teacher didn't answer my questions it \_\_\_\_\_ the subject.

2. I was late for the meeting because something went wrong with my car, and I had to walk the rest of the way.

**broke**

I had to walk the rest way home because \_\_\_\_\_.

3. I'm going back to Boston, the town I grew up in.

**where**

I'm going back to Boston, \_\_\_\_\_ grew up.

4. In the next chapter, Jane meets Mr. Rochester, the hero.

**whose**

In the next chapter, Jane meets the hero, \_\_\_\_\_  
Mr Rochester.

5. I was surprised when my old school friend appeared unexpectedly at the office party.

**turn**

When my old school friend \_\_\_\_\_, I was surprised.

6. I haven't studied biology for a long time.

**since**

It's a long time \_\_\_\_\_ biology.

7. My neighbour came to live here ten years ago.

**for**

My neighbour \_\_\_\_\_ ten years.

8. This is my first visit to the USA.

**not**

I \_\_\_\_\_ the USA before.

9. Phil and Sue started to go out together three months ago.

**going**

Phil and Sue \_\_\_\_\_ out together for three months.

10. Preparations for this party began six months ago.

**been**

We \_\_\_\_\_ for this party for six months.

**#2** Choose the best answer A, B, or C.

1. Last year Mike had to sell his car and since then he \_\_\_\_\_.

A. *isn't driving*      B. *didn't drive*      C. *hasn't been driving*

2. Steve and his younger sister have been learning the violin for a month, \_\_\_\_\_?

A. *has he*      B. *haven't they*      C. *hasn't he*

3. Mrs Green has been working in the garden \_\_\_\_\_ early morning.

A. *for*      B. *in*      C. *since*

4. I couldn't understand the reason \_\_\_\_\_ you were so late.

A. *why*      B. *when*      C. *that*

5. Your tennis \_\_\_\_! \_\_\_\_ in secret?  
*A. has been really improving... Have you practised*  
*B. has really improved... Have you practised*  
*C. has really improved... Have you been practising*
6. Jack's mother \_\_\_\_\_ very well recently.  
*A. feels* *B. has been feeling* *C. has felt*
7. The film \_\_\_\_\_ we saw yesterday was shocking.  
*A. —* *B. whose* *C. who*
8. What \_\_\_\_\_ been listening to all evening?  
*A. has Alan and Liz* *B. have Alan and Liz* *C. Alan and Liz*
9. Who \_\_\_\_\_ taking care of Barbara since she fell ill?  
*A. has been* *B. Sam has been* *C. has Sam been*
10. Mr. Brown, \_\_\_\_\_ I met last night, teaches English to foreign students.  
*A. that* *B. which* *C. who*
11. My father has been learning to drive \_\_\_\_\_ a few months.  
*A. for* *B. in* *C. since*
12. It \_\_\_\_\_ snowing rather heavily for three hours already.  
*A. is* *B. has been* *C. has*
13. I met her last month, \_\_\_\_\_ she came to our house.  
*A. why* *B. when* *C. that*
14. I'm sorry, Ted isn't here; he \_\_\_\_\_ to the dentist. He \_\_\_\_\_ trouble with a tooth.  
*A. has gone... has been having*  
*B. has been going... has had*  
*C. has been going... has been having*
15. A bilingual person is someone \_\_\_\_\_ can speak two languages equally well.  
*A. —* *B. which* *C. who*
16. This is the person \_\_\_\_\_.  
*A. who I sold my car* *B. to who I sold my car* *C. I sold my car to*
17. Do \_\_\_\_\_ you know that Jack smokes?—Really? \_\_\_\_\_.  
*A. How long has he been smoking?* *B. How much has he smoked?*

## UNIT 5: QUALITY TIME

### *Focus on*

- *Television and Video*
- *Cinema and Films*
- *Theatre*
  
- *Past Perfect Simple*
- *Past Perfect Continuous*
- *Past Perfect vs Past Perfect Continuous*
- *Narrative Tenses*
- *Reported Speech*
- *say/tell/ask*

### Past perfect simple

#### *Usage:*

- to refer to something that happened before another action or state in the past  
*I **had spoken** to Mr Taylor before the conference began.*
- to describe earlier events when telling a story in the past  
Tom was 23. His father **had died** five years before, and since then Tom **had lived** alone.
- in reported speech and thoughts  
We realized we **had forgotten** the address.

The following time expressions are used with Past Perfect Simple:

<i>after</i>	<i><b>After</b> he <b>had fixed</b> his car, he decided to have a rest.</i>
<i>already</i>	<i>When I arrived at the office, Kate <b>had already left</b>.</i>
<i>as soon as</i>	<i><b>As soon as</b> I pushed the red button, I realized that I <b>had set off</b> the alarm.</i>
<i>before*</i>	<i>Jack <b>had eaten</b> Japanese food <b>before</b>. so he knew what to order.</i>
<i>by the time</i>	<i>By the time Olga got back, Tom <b>had gone away</b>.</i>
<i>just</i>	<i>She <b>had just left</b> when he phoned.</i>
<i>till/until</i>	<i>He refused to go <b>till</b> he <b>had seen</b> all the pictures.</i>
<i>when</i>	<i><b>When</b> she <b>had known</b> me for a year, she invited me to tea.</i>
<i>yet</i>	<i>When I got to the shop, it <b>hadn't closed yet</b>.</i>

NOTE:

If **before** or **after** is used, Past Perfect Simple is optional.

***Before** the train arrived, Sally **managed** to push her way to the front of the crowd.*

We don't normally use verbs of knowing, understanding, etc. in Past Perfect Simple unless there's an expression denoting a period of time:

*When she **had known** me for a year, she invited me to tea.*

*When I knew the work of one department thoroughly, I was moved to the next department.*

### POSITIVE FORM

***had + Participle II (Past Participle)***

I		<b><i>had (d)</i></b> already <b><i>gone</i></b> out when Jim rang the office.
You		
He/She/It		
We		
You		
They		

**Exercise 1.** Here are some infinitives of some regular and irregular verbs. Write the past participals.

Infinitive	Part.II	Infinitive	Part.II	Infinitive	Part.II
advise		give		plan	
begin		go		rise	
buy		have		see	
catch		hear		sell	
die		keep		stay	
do		know		stop	
dry		leave		take	
eat		lend		tell	
forget		lose		visit	
get		meet		win	



**Exercise 2.** Complete the sentences putting the verbs in brackets in *Past Perfect Simple*.

*Example:* When we arrived at the station, our train had already left.  
(already/leave)

1. When he arrived at the theatre, the play \_\_\_\_\_ (already/start).
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the carpet when the dog came in and shook himself.
3. The patient \_\_\_\_\_ (die) by the time the doctor arrived.
4. As soon as they \_\_\_\_\_ (go), I went straight to bed.
5. I suddenly remembered that I \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) to take my keys.
6. When I came to the post office, it \_\_\_\_\_ (already/close).
7. When Polly went back to the shop, they \_\_\_\_\_ (sell) the book she wanted.
8. The thief \_\_\_\_\_ (already/get away) when the police arrived.
9. I spoke to the woman because I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) her somewhere before.
10. Judie woke up with a terrible headache because she and Tim \_\_\_\_\_ (hold) a party the night before.

**NEGATIVE FORM**

***had not (hadn't) + Participle II***

I

You

He/She/It

We

You

They

***had not (hadn't) eaten*** anything when Kevin got there.

**Exercise 3.** Make the following positive sentences negative.

*Example:* Fortunately, the burglars *had not* disappeared when the police got to Claire's house.

1. They'd eaten everything by the time I arrived at the party.
2. Before last week, they'd known each other.
3. He wasn't happy because he had won the race.
4. She'd visited England before she came this year.
5. Julia had to stay at home because she'd got better.
6. She was angry because she'd caught the bus.
7. The class had started when I arrived.
8. The guests had left before she got home.

9. It was a film that we'd heard of.
10. Paola almost missed her train. But all of the other passengers had boarded by the time she got to the station.

**Exercise 4.** Join the sentences using *because* and *Past Perfect Simple*.

*Example:* Pete and Sue spent the afternoon shopping. They were worn out. *Pete and Sue were worn out because they had spent the afternoon shopping.*

1. They left their passports at home. They couldn't cross the frontier.
2. I didn't check the oil for a long time. The car broke down.
3. Alan didn't keep his promise. She was upset.
4. He lost his glasses. He couldn't read the sign.
5. Ron didn't work hard enough during the year. He failed his exam.
6. We didn't pay our telephone bill. The telephone company cut us off.
7. Nick left his wallet in the office. He was angry.
8. Somebody forgot to lock the front door. The thieves simply walked in.

### GENERAL QUESTIONS

<b>Had</b>	I	<b>made</b> a mistake? — <i>Yes, / (No,)... had(n't).</i>
	you	
	he/she/it	
	we	
	you	
	they	

**Exercise 5.** Make these sentences into general questions. Give short answers.

*Example:* Before we had finished our meal, he ordered us back to work.

*Had we finished our meal before he ordered us back to work? — No, we hadn't.*

The teacher hadn't given a quiz yet when Pete got to class.

*Had the teacher already given a quiz when Pete got to class? — No, she hadn't.*

1. Before we had walked ten miles, he complained of sore feet.
2. The sun hadn't risen before they decided to set off.
3. Before Julia went home, she had finished her work.
4. She hadn't done all the shopping when she suddenly felt sick.
5. He had spoken to the boss before he decided to leave.
6. Before we had supper, the children had gone to bed.
7. He had stayed in his father's farm till his father died.
8. All the speakers had prepared their material thoroughly.

9. Philip hadn't seen the girl before.
10. Ray Wilkinson had lost the fight a second time when he retired.

**Exercise 6.** Rewrite the following sentences as positive, negative, or a general question, according to the instructions.

*Example:* By the time the lecture was over, the rain had already stopped. (Negative). *By the time the lecture was over, they rain hadn't stopped yet.*

The meeting hadn't begun by the time we got there. (Positive)

*The meeting had begun by the time we got there.*

Walter had been a top tennis player before he became a businessman. (Question) *Had Walter been a top tennis player before he became a businessman?*

1. My sister had already gone to bed by the time I got home. (Negative)
2. After he hadn't phoned his grandparents, he felt much better about everything. (Positive)
3. Kathy had washed and dried the last plate when her daughter came in and offered to help. (Question)
4. Hank hadn't tried on several T-shirts before he chose the one he liked most. (Positive)
5. Clark had looked through a list of racing horses before he decided to bet his money on the Morning Dew. (Question)
6. I had finished the letter when I realized it was too late to post it. (Negative)
7. As soon as Leo hadn't given up smoking, he looked much healthier. (Positive)
8. Ted's father had advised him not to get married till he was 35. (Question)

### ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS

<b>Had</b>	I	
	you	
	he/she/it	<b>arrived before midnight or earlier? — Earlier.</b>
	we	
	you	
	they	

**Exercise 7.** Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.

*Example:* Ann/live/in a cottage/for/sixty/fifty years?

*Had Ann lived in a cottage for sixty or fifty years?* (She'd lived in a cottage) for 60 years.

1. Bill/*plan*/to stay in the army/*till* he was thirty/*forty*?
2. She/*buy*/presents/*for her family*/for her friends/*before* she bought something for herself?
3. Liz/*do*/her housework/*some shopping*/*before* she watched television for an hour?
4. *Everyone*/*only* a few people/*have*/a chance/*to* speak up/*before* we took a vote?
5. Diana/*go to bed*/take a short walk round the park/*till* she felt a little better?
6. Sam/*see*/many/*only a few*/of Rembrandt's paintings *before* he visited the art museum?
7. Ten years/*more*/pass/*before* she could forget it?
8. He/*lost*/his case/*at the airport/somewhere else*?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

*When had* their marriage ***broken up***? — *Before their second child was born.*  
*Where had* the criminal ***gone*** when the police arrived? — *Nobody could say.*  
*Where had* they ***left*** the tickets? — *At home.*  
*What had* she ***done*** before she directed her first film? — *She was a movie star.*  
*Why hadn't* she ***told*** me the truth before I found it out myself? — *I think she was afraid.*  
*How many times had* he ***been*** abroad before he emigrated to Canada last year? — *Never!*  
*How much* money ***had*** he ***lost*** before he hit the jackpot? — *A fortune.*  
*How long had* you ***lived*** from hand to mouth before you became rich? — *Oh, quite a long time.*  
*Whose estate had* she ***inherited*** by the time she was 20? — *Her aunt's.*  
*What kind of* films ***had*** he ***done*** before he became famous? — *Mostly, comedies.*  
*Which* programmes ***had*** she ***presented*** before she set up her own company? — *Beauty contests.*

### OBJECT QUESTIONS

*Who had* he ***made*** friends ***with*** before we met him there? — *(With) the Browns.*  
*What had she wanted* to be before she entered that university? — *An architect.*

### SUBJECT QUESTIONS

*Who had* — already ***told*** her the news when I returned? — *Her mother (had).*  
*What had* — ***happened*** before I arrived? — *Someone had broken into Kate's flat.*

**Exercise 8.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

*Example:* When Scott arrived at the South Pole, he realized that *Amundsen* had already been there.

*Who had already been to the South Pole when Scott arrived there?*

1. I'd lost my wallet on the 4.40 train.
2. He hadn't slept for two days.
3. By the time I got there, the meeting had already finished.
4. He had been in various parts of Britain before.
5. My younger brother had bought himself a new jacket.
6. Leo had worked as a clerk before he started his own business.
7. Diana had never been to a jazz concert before, because she wasn't keen on jazz music.
8. Helen had tried five times to get her sister on the phone.
9. When Bob had known his girlfriend for a year, he asked her to marry him.
10. Max had always enjoyed entertainment programmes.
11. By the age of 15, the girl had spoken fluent French.
12. They had shot most of the film on location.
13. By the time he was 30, Jeff had earned enough money to support a family of his own.
14. She had never played character parts before.
15. In London we had stayed with our relatives till we found a suitable hotel.
16. I had never seen Spielberg's films before.
17. When Tracy came home, her parents had already gone to the opera.

### TAG QUESTIONS

I		I
You		you
He/She/It	<b>had ('d)</b> just left when Ann arrived, <b>hadn't</b>	he/she/it? – <i>Yes,/(No,...</i> <i>had(n't).</i>
We		we
You		you
They		they
I		I
You		you
He/She/It	<b>had not (hadn't)</b> done it, <b>had</b>	he/she/it? – <i>Yes,/(No,...</i> <i>had(n't).</i>
We		we
You		you
They		they

**Exercise 9.** Give the right tag to these sentences.

1. He had last seen her ten years before, \_\_\_\_\_?
2. I hadn't seen Jane for many years when she called to see me last week, \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Everybody had already left the office when she arrived, \_\_\_\_\_?
4. When the police arrived, the car had gone, \_\_\_\_\_?
5. She hadn't spoken to the teacher before the lesson began, \_\_\_\_\_?
6. All the garages had closed by the time we crossed the frontier, \_\_\_\_\_?
7. By 2016, we had waited seven months for them to accept our offer, \_\_\_\_\_?
8. He hadn't finished work when the head manager returned, \_\_\_\_\_?
9. When I found my purse, someone had taken the money out of it, \_\_\_\_\_?
10. The rain had already started when we left the beach, \_\_\_\_\_?

**Exercise 10.** Complete the sentences using *Past Perfect Simple* or *Past Simple* of the verbs in brackets. When Daniel came (come) in, we all knew (know) where he had been (be).

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) sorry that I \_\_\_\_\_ (be) rude to him.
2. While they were drinking coffee, she \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) to tell him everything that \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) to her in the past three years.
3. Hardly anyone \_\_\_\_\_ (come) to the party because Sue \_\_\_\_\_ (forget) to send the invitations.
4. We \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) our way. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/know) what to do.
5. The police \_\_\_\_\_ (come) as quickly as they could, but when they \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive), the burglars \_\_\_\_\_ (already/go).
6. As soon as we \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) work, we \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home.
7. Yesterday at the party, Evelyn \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Harold Coleman, an old friend of hers. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not/see) him in years. At first, she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/recognize) him because he (lose) at least twenty pounds.
8. — you \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the cinema in time for the film last night?  
—No, we \_\_\_\_\_ (be) late. By the time we \_\_\_\_\_ (get) there, it \_\_\_\_\_ (already/begin).
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to Helen's room and \_\_\_\_\_ (knock) on the door. There \_\_\_\_\_ (be) no answer. Either she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out or she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/want) to see anyone.
10. Melanie \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) me how to use the photocopier. She \_\_\_\_\_ (never/use) it before, so she \_\_\_\_\_ (not/know) what to do.
11. Tom couldn't find the dictionary that I \_\_\_\_\_ (lend) him.

12. All the people they \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) turned up, and some that they \_\_\_\_\_ (not/invite).
13. Marco \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) very nervous when he first drove in Britain because he \_\_\_\_\_ (not/drove) on the left before.
14. Andrew \_\_\_\_\_ (do) the test before, so he \_\_\_\_\_ (find) it very easy.
15. We \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) the restaurant when we \_\_\_\_\_ (have) dinner.
16. They waited until everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (be) ready, and then they \_\_\_\_\_ (start) the meeting.

## Past perfect continuous

### *Usage:*

- to talk about actions which had been in progress before or up to the time of another past action

*I **had been walking** for about half an hour when it suddenly started to rain.*

- to describe a repeated action

*He'd **been phoning** every night for a month.*

The following time expressions are used with Past Perfect Continuous:

<b>already</b>	<i>We <b>had already been working</b> on the project for two weeks when you joined the team.</i>
<b>for (a long time)</b>	<i>Emma and Jill suddenly realized that they <b>had been talking</b> on the phone <b>for two hours</b>.</i>
<b>since</b>	<i>She had a headache because she <b>had been studying</b> hard without stopping <b>since</b> 2.30 pm.</i>

### NOTE:

Past Perfect Continuous is not used with verbs which are not used in the continuous forms except with **want** and **wish**  
*The boy was delighted with his new knife. He **had been wanting** one for a long time.*

## POSITIVE FORM

### *had ('d) been + Participle I (Verb-ing)*

I	
You	
He/She/It	<i>had ('d) been cooking*</i> on the stove.
We	
You	
They	

\* Spelling of ending—**ing**. See Appendix p. 227.

**Exercise 12.** Complete the sentences using *Past Perfect Continuous* of the verbs in brackets.

*Example:* Mr Brown *had been working* (work) for 45 years when he finally retired in 1970.

1. The FBI \_\_\_\_\_ (look) for the criminal for three years before they caught him.
2. When Sam got home, his hair was still wet because he \_\_\_\_\_ (swim).
3. Mary's eyes were red and puffy because she \_\_\_\_\_ (cry).
4. The injured man \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) in the emergency room for almost an hour and a half before they finally treated him.
5. Joe \_\_\_\_\_ (already/think) about changing jobs when he got the offer.
6. They didn't like the house, even though they \_\_\_\_\_ (live) there for years.
7. When I got there, she \_\_\_\_\_ (work) all night.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) for about four hours when I realized that something was wrong with one of the tyres.

**Exercise 13.** Read the story. Answer the questions which follow the story.

*Example:* Who had black grease on his hands at tea time? Why?

*Walter's father had, because he'd been repairing his car.*

On Friday afternoon, everyone in Walter's family was very busy—except him. During the afternoon his father repaired his car; his brother Ned practised his karate; his mother did some gardening; his sister Evelyn played tennis; his nephew Jim swam for an hour; his niece Gloria went horse-riding; his cousin Fred painted the ceiling in his room. Walter spent the afternoon playing computer games.

1. Who had dirt on her hands and knees? Why?
2. Who was wearing a short white skirt? Why?
3. Who was wearing a white jacket and white trousers and a black belt? Why?



4. Who was wearing high boots and a hard hat? Why?
5. Whose hair had white streaks in it? Why?
6. Whose hair was all wet? Why?

### NEGATIVE FORM

I	
You	
He/She/It	<b><i>had not (hadn't) been working</i></b> all night.
We	
You	
They	

**Exercise 14.** Complete the sentences with the negative form of the verbs in brackets. Use ***Past Perfect Continuous***.

*Example:* We *hadn't been waiting* (not/wait) for her for a long time. She arrived in time.

1. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/work) hard all day, so I wasn't very tired last night.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not/practise) English for over two years before she enrolled on an English course.
3. Kate's sister \_\_\_\_\_ (not/study) at university for eight years.
4. "I'm really sorry I was so late last night."—"That's OK. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/wait).
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/feel) well for weeks before I finally went to see the doctor.
6. When Frank got home, he found that his children \_\_\_\_\_ (not/do) their homework.
7. They \_\_\_\_\_ (not/walk) all that time in the park.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ (not/try) to find a good job for quite a long time.

### GENERAL QUESTIONS

I		you	
you		I	
<b><i>Had</i></b> he/she/it	<b><i>been doing</i></b> anything before it all happened? – <b><i>Yes, /(No,)</i></b>	he/she/it	<b><i>had(n't)</i></b> .
We		you	
you		we	
they		they	

**Exercise 15.** Make these sentences into general questions.

*Example:* Vivian had been taking courses in electrical engineering for months before she decided to become an engineer. *Had Vivian been taking courses in electrical engineering for months before she decided to become an engineer?*

1. We'd been waiting for an hour when our train finally arrived yesterday.
2. Henry had been playing football for over ten years when he gave it up in 2008.
3. They'd been living in London for fifteen years when they moved to Paris last year.
4. You'd been talking about ghosts when you heard the noise upstairs.
5. She'd been standing there for nearly half an hour when she realized she was at the wrong bus-stop.
6. Glen had been driving for an hour when his car broke down.
7. They'd been walking for about half an hour when they realized they were lost.
8. Mr Johnson had been trying to find a job for three months when finally he decided to emigrate.

**ALTERNATIVE QUESTIONS**

<b>Had</b>	I		<b>been talking</b> with the manager <b>or</b> his secretary? – <i>(With) his secretary.</i>
	you		
	he/she		
	We		
	you		
	they		

**Had** | it | **been raining** all night **or** only at dawn? — *All night.*

**Exercise 16.** Ask alternative questions with the following words. Give answers.

*Example:* You/read/for/an hour/two hours/before you turned on the TV?  
*Had you been reading for an hour or two hours before you turned on the TV?*  
— *(I'd been reading) for two hours.*

1. You/sit/in the sunshine/for/about thirty minutes/an hour/when you suddenly felt sick?
2. There were books everywhere. She/read books/tidy up her room?
3. Dave/smoke/for 20 years/less/before he gave up that bad habit?
4. They/wait/for the train/for a few minutes/longer?

5. Carla/travel/for/a week/two weeks/before she finally got there?
6. He/try to get/Julia/*her sister*/on the phone?
7. The Greens/live/in Norway/in Denmark/for five years before they moved to Holland.
8. Pete and Alice/quarrel/seldom/regularly/before they finally broke up?

### SPECIAL QUESTIONS

*What had* your son ***been doing*** when you came back from work? — *Playing computer games.*

*What had* she ***been cooking*** when you got home? — *A cake.*

*When had* they ***been shopping*** all day? — *Last Saturday.*

*Where had* the soldiers ***been marching***? — *To the parade.*

*Where had* they ***been living*** before they left for Hungary? — *In Poland.*

*Why had* you ***been phoning*** her every day for a month? — *I just don't know.*

*What kind of* film *had* Patrick ***been watching*** when his mother entered the room? — *A Western.*

*Which* serial *had* your grandpa ***been watching*** all last week? — *"Unknown War".*

*Whose (friends) had* Helen ***been staying with*** before she found a hotel? — *Peter's.*

*How (in what way) had* they ***been trying*** to get in touch with her? — *By cellphone.*

*How fast had* he ***been driving*** when he knocked down a child? — *At about 100 km an hour.*

*How much had* she ***been earning*** when she asked for promotion? — *Not very much, I guess.*

*How long had* you ***been corresponding*** with your penfriend? — *For about a year.*

### OBJECT QUESTIONS

*Who had* you ***been calling*** every day for the past week? — *A colleague of mine.*

*What had* you ***been waiting*** for when I ran into you? — *The bus.*

### SUBJECT QUESTIONS

*Who had* — ***been doing up*** the room all day? — *The decorators.*

*What had* — ***been going on*** at Harry's place all last night? — *A stag party.*

**Exercise 17.** Ask questions about the information in italics.

1. Sally had been walking round the town *for a few hours* when she decided to have lunch.
2. We'd been waiting *for your call* all evening.
3. She'd been cooking all day for the party *that evening*.

4. Jill *had been painting her room* before her friends called in.
5. *Sam* had been using that fountain pen for some time.
6. He'd been standing *outside* for over two hours when he felt cold.
7. They'd been trying to telephone *her* all the weekend.
8. Liz had been watching an *interesting* TV programme before she went out for a walk.
9. The children had been doing *their homework* all Friday evening.
10. The Browns had been staying at the Hilton *because their friends couldn't put them up*.
11. Terry and Ellen had been going *to the theatre* when I met them.
12. Greta had been looking through the '*Vogue*' magazine when Paul dropped in.
13. Peggy had been waiting for *Daniel's* call that evening.
14. They'd been walking *3 kilometres an hour*.
15. *A forest fire* had been raging for a fortnight.
16. Wendy put on weight last month. She'd been eating *too much* fatty food.
17. Tim had been shooting films with *his father's* movie camera.

### TAG QUESTIONS

I		I
You		you
He/She/It	<b><i>had ('d) been waiting</i></b> for an hour, <b><i>hadn't</i></b>	he/she/it? – Yes,/(No,...) <b><i>had(n't)</i></b> .
We		we
You		you
They		they

I		I
You		you
He/She/It	<b><i>had not (hadn't) been working</i></b> all day, <b><i>had</i></b>	he/she/it? – Yes,/(No,...) <b><i>had(n't)</i></b> .
We		we
You		you
They		they

**Exercise 18.** Give the right tag to these sentences.

- It was late and she'd been working since early morning, \_\_\_\_\_?
- You hadn't been standing there since 6 o'clock, \_\_\_\_\_?
- He'd been gardening all day, \_\_\_\_\_?
- They hadn't been writing to the firm for all that time, \_\_\_\_\_?
- Jane had been studying English for 5 years before she visited England, \_\_\_\_\_?

He'd been running in the park when I saw him, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 They had been ringing me about it every day for the past week, \_\_\_\_\_?  
 You hadn't been playing volleyball all evening, \_\_\_\_\_?

### PAST PERFECT SIMPLE VS PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS

Past Perfect Simple	Past Perfect Continuous
<p>is used:</p> <p>1) to express <u>a single completed action</u> which happened <u>before</u> a definite time in the past</p> <p><i>When I got home, I found that Jack <b>had painted</b> the door.</i>          (Perhaps recently, perhaps some time ago.)—a completed action</p>	<p>is used:</p> <p>1) to express <u>longer activities</u> which had been going on continuously up to, or beyond, a definite time in the past</p> <p><i>When I got home, I found that Jack <b>had been painting</b> the door.</i>          (The paint was probably still wet.)—an uncompleted action</p>
<p>2) with verbs not used in the continuous</p> <p><i>By the time they finally broke up, they <b>had known</b> each other for ten years.</i></p>	<p>2) with <b>want</b> and sometimes <b>wish</b></p> <p><i>Ruth <b>had always been wanting</b> to live somewhere in the mountains a long way from the hustle and bustle of London.</i></p>

**Exercise 19. Past Perfect Simple or Past Perfect Continuous?** Choose the best answer.

*Example:* Sarah   A   a beautiful meal for her guests and they all enjoyed it.

A. *had prepared*                      B. *had been preparing*

1. I knew my mother \_\_\_\_\_ the washing because the washing machine was still working when I got in.

A. *had done*                      B. *had been doing*

2. By 10.30 pm the children \_\_\_\_\_ their homework and were ready to go to bed.

A. *had been doing*                      B. *had done*

3. My son came home crying because someone \_\_\_\_\_ his money.

A. *had stolen*                      B. *had been stealing*

4. She saw empty glasses and cups and realized that three people \_\_\_\_\_ in the room.  
*A. had been* *B. had been being*
5. It was midnight. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ for four hours. No wonder he was getting tired.  
*A. had studied* *B. had been studying*
6. Andy's father bought him a car because he \_\_\_\_\_ top in the final exam.  
*A. had been coming* *B. had come*
7. Clark went to hospital because he \_\_\_\_\_ his hand while he was trying to mend a broken window.  
*A. had been cutting* *B. had cut*
8. Ada's mother told her off when she came home late because she \_\_\_\_\_ about her all evening.  
*A. had worried* *B. had been worrying*
9. I was very pleased when my daughter found my watch because I \_\_\_\_\_ for it for hours.  
*A. had been looking* *B. had looked*
10. Henry suddenly realized that the teacher was asking him a question. He couldn't answer because he \_\_\_\_\_ for the last five minutes.  
*A. had been daydreaming* *B. had daydreamed*
11. Robert wrote to the local newspaper about some rare insects which he \_\_\_\_\_ while he was walking in the woods.  
*A. had been seeing* *B. had seen*
12. Mark sent postcards to the new friends he \_\_\_\_\_ while he was attending a language course.  
*A. had made* *B. had been making*

**Exercise 20.** Put the verbs in brackets in **Past Perfect Simple** or **Past Perfect Continuous**.

*Example:* I arrived at midday to give Peter a lift, but he had already left (already/leave) to catch his train.

1. The burglar got inside easily because no one \_\_\_\_\_ (lock) the front door.
2. When we arrived at the station, we saw that our train \_\_\_\_\_ (already/leave).
3. Ted was sitting on the ground. He was out of breath because he \_\_\_\_\_ (run).
4. I was tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ (work) all day.

5. At least three hundred people were waiting in the queue to buy tickets for the game. Some of them \_\_\_\_\_ (stand) in the queue for more than four hours.
6. Soon after the wedding, she knew that she \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a mistake.
7. At the time the bank went bust, Becky \_\_\_\_\_ (work) there for three years.
8. Julia boasted that her boss \_\_\_\_\_ (give) her an extra half hour for lunch because she \_\_\_\_\_ (work) very hard all morning.
9. Brian's family were very impressed to discover that he \_\_\_\_\_ (cook) lunch when he came home from work early.
10. When I came out of the cinema I found that a thief \_\_\_\_\_ (take) my car radio.
11. We missed our train, so by the time we reached the theatre, the play \_\_\_\_\_ (end), and the audience was leaving the theatre.
12. He looked filthy. He \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) under bridges for a month and \_\_\_\_\_ (drink) far too much.

### NARRATIVE TENSES

Narrative tense	Usage
Past Simple	<p>when we are describing finished events in the past and want to tell a story in a chronological order</p> <p><i>Sally <b>went</b> to the station and <b>bought</b> a ticket.</i></p>
Past Continuous	<p>for background descriptions and when we are describing actions still in progress or actions interrupted by a sudden event</p> <p><i>There were a lot of people waiting at the station. Some <b>were sleeping</b> on the benches, and others <b>were walking</b> up and down. Sally <b>was looking for</b> Greg, so she didn't sit down. While she <b>was trying</b> to get onto the platform, a man <b>grabbed</b> her handbag.</i></p>
Past Perfect Simple	<p>when we are describing a past event which took place before another past event and want to re-order the story for dramatic affect</p> <p><i>By the time the train arrived, Sally <b>had managed</b> to push her way to the front of the crowd.</i></p>

Past Perfect Continuous	<p>When we are already talking about the past and want to refer to a previous action that had been in progress up to a definite time in the past</p> <p><i>By the time Greg finally turned up, Sally <b>had been waiting for him for over an hour and a half.</b></i></p>
-------------------------	---

**Exercise 21.** Put each verb in brackets into a suitable past tense. If two answers are possible, write the more likely one.

It was about two o'clock in the morning when a loud noise \_\_\_\_\_ (wake) me up. It \_\_\_\_\_ (be) such a cold night that I \_\_\_\_\_ (not/want) to get up, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in bed and \_\_\_\_\_ (listen). Since I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) nothing more, I \_\_\_\_\_ (conclude) that the sound \_\_\_\_\_ (come) from the street. I \_\_\_\_\_ (just/put) the bed clothes over my head to go back to sleep, when I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) another loud bang. I \_\_\_\_\_ (put) on my dressing gown and \_\_\_\_\_ (go) downstairs. I \_\_\_\_\_ (find) the drawing-room door open and could not remember if I \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) it like that. I \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) on the lights but could see nothing unusual, so I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) across to one of the windows. It \_\_\_\_\_ so cold outside that ice \_\_\_\_\_ (form) on the window panes. I \_\_\_\_\_ (scrape) it away and \_\_\_\_\_ (look) down on the garden below, it \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) heavily and a thick white blanket \_\_\_\_\_ (cover) everything. The branches of the trees \_\_\_\_\_ (look) like white arms against the night sky. There was certainly no sign that anyone \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) in the garden. As I \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) to feel cold, I \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to my room, \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) on my bed and \_\_\_\_\_ (wait). When I \_\_\_\_\_ (hear) another loud noise coming from directly above me, I understood: the water in the pipes leading to the tank in the attic \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) to freeze and the pipes \_\_\_\_\_ (protest) loudly!

**Exercise 22.** Put each verb in brackets into a suitable past tense. If two answers are possible, write the more likely one. Where it is possible, use **would** instead of Past Simple.

A nurse showed me into the waiting-room which, as I (I) \_\_\_\_\_ (expect), was full. I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) my seat and \_\_\_\_\_



(decide) to pass the time watching the people around me. A little man beside me \_\_\_\_\_ (turn) over the pages of a magazine quickly and nervously. It was hard to understand what he \_\_\_\_\_ (look) at, for every three minutes or so he \_\_\_\_\_ (throw) the magazine on to the table, \_\_\_\_\_ (seize) another, and \_\_\_\_\_ (sink) back into his chair. Opposite me there was a young mother who \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to calm down her son who \_\_\_\_\_ (make) a lot of noise. The boy \_\_\_\_\_ (obviously/become) tired of waiting. He \_\_\_\_\_ (place) an ashtray on the floor and \_\_\_\_\_ (make) aeroplane-noises as he waved a pencil in his hands. Near him, an old man \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep). At last the little man next to me \_\_\_\_\_ (get up), \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) towards the door and impatiently \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) to examine the pictures on the wall. Soon he \_\_\_\_\_ (get) bored, \_\_\_\_\_ (take) another magazine from the bottom of the pile and \_\_\_\_\_ (drop) wearily into a chair. Even the boy \_\_\_\_\_ (become) quiet and \_\_\_\_\_ (sleep) in his mother's arms. There was a deathly silence in the room as the door \_\_\_\_\_ (open) and a nurse \_\_\_\_\_ (enter). The people \_\_\_\_\_ (look) up expectantly with a ray of hope in their eyes, then \_\_\_\_\_ (settle) down again as the next lucky patient went out of the room.

**Exercise 23.** Tell your classmates a story on one of the following topics. You will need to include in your story a mixture of narrative, description, and perhaps opinion.

- your memories of the place where you spent the first ten years of your life;
- your first day at school/at university;
- an event which you will never forget.

## REPORTED SPEECH

There are two ways of reporting what a person says

- **Direct Speech** (reports the exact words the speaker says)

*She said, "I'm leaving for New York."*

*"I'm going home," he said.*

- **Indirect Speech** (does not repeat the speaker's exact words)

*She says she's leaving for New York.*

## REPORTING VERBS

The most common reporting verbs in both direct and indirect speech are: **SAY, TELL, ASK**

- **SAY** + a personal indirect object (**to Sally, to me, to her, to us**, etc.) means 'speak words'

*"I don't like them very much, "she said to me quietly.*

NOTE:

We normally use **SAY** without a personal object.

*"I can drive," she said.*

- **TELL** + a personal direct object (e.g., **David, me, him**, etc.) means 'inform a person' She **told me** she was going to be late.

NOTE:

**TELL** is not used without a personal direct object

*He **told** Sarah he was in love with her.*

**TELL** is not used with questions

You cannot say *"Have you ever been abroad?" he **told** me.*

- **ASK** + a personal direct object (e.g., **me, him, her**, etc.) or no object at all  
*"Are you happy?" he **asked** (her).*

NOTE:

There are a few fixed expressions with **say, tell** and **ask**

<b>say</b> a few words	<b>tell</b> (he) truth	<b>ask</b> after someone
<b>say</b> so	<b>tell</b> a lie	<b>ask</b> (for) a favour
<b>say</b> no more	<b>tell</b> the time	<b>ask</b> a question
<b>say</b> nothing	<b>tell</b> lies	<b>ask</b> the price
	<b>tell</b> a story	

**Exercise 24.** Put a form of either **say, tell** or **ask** in each space.

*Example: «Do you like visiting old buildings?» she **asked**.*

1. Do you think he's \_\_\_\_\_ the truth?
2. I \_\_\_\_\_ I wanted to buy a newspaper.
3. The children always \_\_\_\_\_ me if they can go out to play.
4. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ the time please?

5. Julia smiled and \_\_\_\_\_ to me, «I'm very pleased to meet you.»
6. «How much are those apples?»—»I've no idea. Go and \_\_\_\_\_ the price.»
7. I think she's \_\_\_\_\_ lies.
8. He \_\_\_\_\_ the policeman his address.
9. James \_\_\_\_\_ me a story about his parents.
10. If you need money, why don't you \_\_\_\_\_ for a loan?
11. Gregory \_\_\_\_\_ he wasn't interested in politics.
12. He \_\_\_\_\_, «Are you feeling OK?»
13. I didn't hear: what did she \_\_\_\_\_?
14. «Are you comfortable?» he \_\_\_\_\_ me.
15. «There's no match on Saturday?»--»Who \_\_\_\_\_ so?»
16. «They've arrived,» the maid \_\_\_\_\_.
17. I \_\_\_\_\_ that I didn't know what to do.
18. The nurse \_\_\_\_\_ him if he needed anything else.
19. «Don't do that!» she \_\_\_\_\_ to them.
20. «How are you?» she \_\_\_\_\_.

## INDIRECT SPEECH

### REPORTED STATEMENTS: without tense changes

- If the reporting verb is in **Present Simple**, **Present Perfect Simple**, or **Future Simple** there is no change of tenses in the reported statement

=> Brenda **says**

*"I'm arriving at 7.00. "* => Brenda **has said** that\* *she is arriving* at 7.00.

=> Brenda **will say**

NOTE:

The use of **that** is optional

- If the reported words are 'always true' (e.g., a theory, belief, or general truth), there is no change

*George said, "Doctors don't like to upset their patients. "*

=> George **said** doctors **don't like** to upset their patients.

- Pronouns and possessive adjectives often change in reported statements

Chuck said, "I am on holiday with my friend."

↓

↓

Chuck said **he** was on holiday with **his** friend.

**Exercise 25.** Write these sentences in indirect speech using the words given. Change the pronouns where necessary.

*Example:* "We haven't had anything to eat." (The children say)

*The children say (that) they haven't had anything to eat.*

1. "I can't stand classical music.» (Kelly says)
2. «There are no tickets left for tonight's performance.» (The booking office says)
3. «I've already seen the play.» (He says)
4. «I haven't got any money.» (He'll tell you)
5. «We must look into this case.» (The policeman says)
6. «She's going to Canada for two months.» (They say)
7. «I'll come again next year.» (I've told them)
8. «The plane will land in twenty minutes.» (The pilot has just announced)
9. «I don't like going on business trips.» (He's told us)
10. «I don't know how much it costs.» (She says)
11. «We've never been to Saudi Arabia.» (They say)
12. «I haven't seen my father for years.» (He says)
13. «I'm going to visit China this year.» (The president will announce)
14. «They went to Rhodes last year.» (Kevin tells me)

### **REPORTED STATEMENTS: with tense changes**

- If the reporting verb is in the *past tense*, the tense in the reported statement is changed

*"I'm writing a letter."* => *She said she was **writing** a letter.*

*"I want to go home."* => *He said he **wanted** to go home.*

- In complex sentences, only the first verb is changed

*"I was walking home when I saw the accident."*

=> *Sam said he **had been walking** home when he **saw** the accident.*

- If we report something that is still true now, we sometimes use the same tense as the speaker used

*"I live in Moscow."* => *She told me that she **lives in** Moscow.*

#### **NOTE:**

But even when something is still true, we often change the tense in reported speech

*She told me that she **lived** in Moscow.*

Speaker's words	Reporting Verb	Reported statements
<b>Present Simple</b> "My name's Pete." "I <i>don't like</i> the idea." "I <i>haven't got</i> any money."		<b>Past Simple</b> his name <i>was</i> Pete. he <i>didn't like</i> the idea. she <i>didn't have</i> any money.
<b>Present Continuous</b> "I <i>'m waiting</i> for Kate."		<b>Past Continuous</b> she <i>was waiting</i> for Kate.
<b>Present Perfect Simple</b> "I <i>haven't done</i> my homework."		<b>Past Perfect Simple</b> he <i>hadn't done</i> his homework.
<b>Past Simple</b> "I <i>stayed</i> in a hotel for a few weeks."		<b>Past Simple or Past Perfect Simple</b> (Past Perfect Simple is often optional) she <i>stayed/had stayed</i> in a hotel for a few weeks.
<b>Past Continuous</b> "They <i>were seeing</i> Pam off on her plane."		<b>Past Perfect Continuous</b> they <i>had been seeing</i> Pam off on her plane.
<b>Past Perfect Simple</b> "I <i>had eaten</i> earlier."	She said	<b>Past Perfect Simple</b> she <i>had eaten</i> earlier.
<b>will/shall</b> "I <i>will</i> phone the office from the airport." "I <i>shall</i> speak to him." "We <i>'ll have driven</i> two hundred kilometres by that time." "John and Tom <i>will</i> probably <i>be staying</i> at an expensive hotel somewhere."	He told (me)	<b>Would</b> he <i>would</i> phone the office from the airport.  she <i>would</i> speak to him. we <i>would</i> have driven <i>two hundred</i> kilometres by that time. John and Tom <i>would</i> probably <i>be staying</i> at an expensive hotel somewhere.
<b>Can</b> "I <i>can</i> speak English."		<b>Could</b> he <i>could</i> speak English.
<b>Must</b> "I <i>must</i> find it out." "I <i>must</i> work till late."		<b>must or had to</b> (—necessity in the past) she <i>must/had to</i> find it out. <b>must or would have to</b> (— necessity in the future) he <i>must/would have to</i> work till late.
<b>Mustn't</b> "Lilly <i>mustn't</i> give up."		<b>mustn't or couldn't</b> Lilly <i>mustn't/couldn't</i> give up.

**Exercise 26.** Write these sentences in indirect speech.

*Example:* “The car isn’t at my house,” he said.

*He said that the car wasn’t at his house.*

1. “I can’t speak any French,” he said.
2. “I’m trying to do my homework,” she said.
3. “I spoke to Jane at the party,” he said.
4. “I must leave in two days,” she said.
5. “I was having dinner at that moment,” he said.
6. “I’m keen on flower arranging,” she said.
7. “I haven’t been waiting long,” she said.
8. “I’ll have done it by then,” he said.
9. “I’ve already been to Berlin,” he said.
10. “I mustn’t skip meals,” she said.
11. “I’d been to the cinema with Eddie,” she said.
12. “I’ll be working all day,” he said.
13. “I must go home to make the dinner,” she said.
14. “I see Liz quite often,” he said.
15. “I’ve been with the company for most of my life,” she said.

### **REPORTED STATEMENTS: other changes**

- Other words in direct speech need to be changed when you report them

tomorrow	→	the next day/the following day
yesterday	→	the day before
here	→	there
this/that	→	that
this morning	→	that morning
today	→	that day
tonight	→	that night
next/on Monday	→	the following Monday
last Monday/weekend	→	the previous Monday/weekend
the day after tomorrow	→	in two days’ time
ago	→	before/previously
last night	→	the night before
now	→	then/immediately

**Exercise 27.** Write these sentences in indirect speech, changing words where necessary.

*Example:* “I’ll see you tomorrow,” Sarah said.

*Sarah said she would see me the next day.*

1. "I can see you tomorrow," he told me.
2. "You must come to Dave's party with me on Saturday," Hilary said.
3. "I'm very busy now," John told his son.
4. "I'm leaving this afternoon," Ron said.
5. "Pete is bringing some records to the party tonight," Helen told Simon.
6. "I saw him today," Christine said.
7. "We visited Mr Simons last night," he said.
8. "I'll see my parents the day after tomorrow," Sue told her friend.
9. "I don't like this film," Andrew said.
10. "I went to the theatre last weekend," he said.
11. "The wedding will take place next Friday," they told us.
12. "My parents are arriving tomorrow," she told me.
13. "We waited an hour yesterday," they said.
14. "Tonight I'm going to the theatre," Mike told us.
15. "You'll regret this!" she said.
16. "I really like this furniture," my mother said.
17. "I dreamed of you last night," he said.

### REPORTED QUESTIONS: general and alternative questions

- Tenses, adjectives, pronouns, etc. in reported questions change in the same way as in reported statements

*She asked if/whether I was comfortable.*

Speaker's words	Reporting Verb		Reported question
"Are you comfortable or not?"	She asked	if	<i>I was</i> comfortable or not.
"Do you go to church every Sunday?"			<i>I went</i> to church every Sunday.
"Have you got all the necessary documents?"			<i>I had</i> all the necessary documents.
"Are you enjoying yourselves?"	Helen didn't know	whether	<i>We were enioing</i> ourselves.
"Have you seen Ted recently?"			<i>I had seen</i> Ted recently.

Speaker's words	Reporting Verb		Reported question
"Has Jackie been living here long?"	He wanted to know		<i>Jackie had been living there long.</i>
"Did you see James at the party?"			<i>I saw/had seen James at the party.</i>
"Was Pete getting ready for the exam when you came in?"	Sue wondered		<i>Pete had been getting ready for the exam when I came in.</i>
"Had he solved the problem by Monday evening?"			<i>he had solved the problem by Monday evening.</i>
"Will John and Ron be at the conference?"			<i>John and Ron would be at the conference.</i>
"Will you be coming to the concert or not?"			<i>I would be coming to the concert or not.</i>

**Exercise 28.** Write these general and alternative questions in indirect speech, using the given words. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example:* "Do you want a drink?" He asked me *if I wanted a drink.*

- "Did you study hard for the exam?" My friend wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_
- "Do you like Chinese or Korean food?" He asked me \_\_\_\_\_
- "Are you cold?" She asked me \_\_\_\_\_
- "Have you been to France or Italy?" They didn't know \_\_\_\_\_
- "Will you be at the party?" She wondered \_\_\_\_\_
- "Were you right or wrong?" Jane asked Pete \_\_\_\_\_
- "Was Tony enjoying himself?" Sally wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_
- "Will you have done the job by the time I get back?" she asked \_\_\_\_\_
- "Are the children studying?" He asked \_\_\_\_\_



10. "Did you do quite a few little jobs yesterday?" Mike asked his wife \_\_\_\_\_
11. "Will you be seeing John at the meeting tomorrow?" She asked \_\_\_\_\_
12. "Has she been quiet?" Joan asked the baby-sitter \_\_\_\_\_
13. "Is the phone ringing?" He asked \_\_\_\_\_
14. "Will you see him tonight?" She wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_
15. "Had you been cooking when your friends came?" My mother asked \_\_\_\_\_
16. "Is she there?" I wondered \_\_\_\_\_

### REPORTED QUESTIONS: special questions

Speaker's words	Reporting Verbs	Reported questions
<p><b><i>"What's</i></b> your brother's name?"</p> <p><b><i>"What</i></b> does he do?"</p> <p><b><i>"What</i></b> are you doing?"</p> <p><b><i>"What kind of holiday</i></b> has Nick had."</p> <p><b><i>"How long</i></b> have you both been living here?"</p> <p><b><i>"Why</i></b> did you say that?"</p> <p><b><i>"Whose</i></b> number did you ring?</p> <p><b><i>"Where</i></b> had they all gone when the police arrived?"</p> <p><b><i>"When</i></b> will breakfast be ready?"</p> <p><b><i>"Which</i></b> countries will Clive be visiting?"</p> <p><b><i>"How many</i></b> people will there be at the conference?"</p>	<p>She asked</p> <p>He wanted to know</p> <p>Kate wondered</p> <p>Joe didn't know</p>	<p><b><i>what</i></b> my brother's name was.</p> <p><b><i>what</i></b> he did.</p> <p><b><i>what</i></b> I was doing.</p> <p><b><i>what kind of holiday</i></b> Nick has had</p> <p><b><i>how long</i></b> we had both been living there.</p> <p><b><i>why</i></b> I'd said that.</p> <p><b><i>whose</i></b> number I had rung.</p> <p><b><i>where</i></b> they had all gone when the police arrived.</p> <p><b><i>when</i></b> breakfast would be ready.</p> <p><b><i>which</i></b> countries Clive would be visiting.</p> <p><b><i>how many</i></b> people would there be at the conference.</p>

Speaker's words	Reporting Verbs	Reported questions
<u>Object questions</u> <b>"Who</b> were you <i>looking</i> for?" <b>"What</b> shampoo do you <i>use</i> ?" <u>Subject questions</u> <b>"Who</b> <i>left</i> the bag here?" <b>"What</b> <i>makes</i> a noise like that?"		<b>who I</b> had been looking for. <b>what</b> shampoo I used.  <b>who had left</b> the bag there. <b>what made</b> a noise like that.

**Exercise 29.** Write these special questions in indirect speech, using the given words. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example:* "What time does the train arrive?" He asked what time *the train* arrived.

"What's the soup of the day?" He asked the waiter \_\_\_\_\_

"What time did you get home?" My parents asked \_\_\_\_\_

"What time does the film finish?" She didn't know \_\_\_\_\_

"Why wasn't Judy at the party?" He wondered \_\_\_\_\_

"What are you doing here?" They asked me \_\_\_\_\_

"Why won't you let me in?" I asked \_\_\_\_\_

"Who's next, please?" The nurse asked \_\_\_\_\_

"Who did you see at the meeting?" James asked his colleague \_\_\_\_\_

"Whose composition haven't you heard yet?" She asked \_\_\_\_\_

10. "Where did you go last week?" Christine wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_

11. "Which films have won prizes for exports?" They asked \_\_\_\_\_

12. "Why is Maria crying?" We wondered \_\_\_\_\_

13. "What have you been doing all this time?" He wondered \_\_\_\_\_

14. "Where have you been?" My father asked \_\_\_\_\_

15."Which of you is waiting to see me next?" The doctor asked \_\_\_\_\_.

16."Who paid the waiter?" He asked me \_\_\_\_\_.

17."Which book have you taken?" The librarian didn't know \_\_\_\_\_.

18."What caused the accident?" The traffic warden asked \_\_\_\_\_.

### REPORTED QUESTIONS: tag questions

Speaker's words	'Reporting verbs		Reported questions
"You're ready, aren't you?"	he asked	if  whether	I <i>was</i> ready.
"You <i>don't like</i> action films, do you?"			I <i>liked</i> action films.
"She's <i>got</i> a big collection of stamps, <i>hasn't she</i> ?"			she <i>had</i> a big collection of stamps.
"Tessa <i>doesn't know</i> what to do, <i>does she</i> ?"			Tessa <i>knew</i> what to do.
"They're <i>selling</i> their house, aren't they?"	they <i>were selling</i> their house.		
"Pam's <i>gone out</i> , <i>hasn't she</i> ?"	she wondered		Pam <i>had gone out</i> .
"Carla <i>wasn't</i> at home, <i>was she</i> ?"			Carla <i>had been</i> at home.
"He'd <i>already left</i> by the time you arrived, <i>hadn't he</i> ?"	I wanted to know		he <i>had</i> <i>already left</i> by the time I arrived.
"You'll <i>repair</i> my bike on Saturday, <i>won't you</i> ?"	Greg didn't know		I <i>would repair</i> his bike on Saturday.
"They <i>won't have done</i> all the job by then, <i>will they</i> ?"			they <i>would have done</i> all the job by then.
"I <i>can</i> afford to buy a new car now, <i>can't I</i> ?"			he <i>could</i> afford to buy a new car.
"She <i>must go</i> there, <i>mustn't she</i> ?"		she <i>had to go</i> there.	

**Exercise 30.** Write these tag questions in indirect speech, using the given words. Make all the necessary changes.

1. "They're on holiday, aren't they?" He didn't know \_\_\_\_\_
2. "The president hasn't signed the contract, has he?" The secretary asked \_\_\_\_\_
3. "She wants to go home, doesn't she?" Sandy asked \_\_\_\_\_
4. "I mustn't protest at your proposal, must I?" Katerina wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_
5. "You'll manage, won't you?" He asked \_\_\_\_\_
6. "I've lost a lot of weight, haven't I?" Kelly asked \_\_\_\_\_
7. "We can't go tomorrow, can we?" They wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_
8. "Jim's washing the car, isn't he?" He asked \_\_\_\_\_
9. "Someone broke that vase, didn't they?" Mrs. Smith asked \_\_\_\_\_
10. "Ron had already opened the letter, hadn't he?" Jim \_\_\_\_\_
11. "She'll be working tomorrow, won't she?" Mr Trent asked \_\_\_\_\_
12. "She'll post this, won't she?" I wondered \_\_\_\_\_

### REPORTED COMMANDS

Speaker's words	Reporting verbs	Reported commands
"Stop!" "Don't go!" "Never do this again!"	she asked him told* me	<b>to stop. not to go.</b> <b>never to do</b> that again.

#### NOTE:

Some verbs can be used for reported commands: **order, command; warn; instruct**, etc.

**Exercise 31.** Write these sentences in indirect speech, using the given words. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example:* "Hurry up!" He told me *to hurry up*.

1. "Close the window." I told you \_\_\_\_\_
2. "Sit down, Sam." The teacher told Sam \_\_\_\_\_
3. "Don't smoke in the office." The manager told a new employee \_\_\_\_\_
4. "Finish the job tonight, please." The boss told me \_\_\_\_\_
5. "Don't be afraid." My friend told me \_\_\_\_\_
6. "Leave the money on the kitchen table." My mother told me \_\_\_\_\_
7. "Don't use the telephone after eleven o'clock." The landlord told us \_\_\_\_\_
8. "Don't shout at me!" She told him \_\_\_\_\_
9. "Be quiet, children." The teacher told the children \_\_\_\_\_
10. "Don't go near the sea, Johnnie." Johnnie's mother warned him \_\_\_\_\_
11. "Don't spend too much money on your holiday." My husband told me \_\_\_\_\_
12. "Run!" The general ordered the soldiers \_\_\_\_\_
13. "Don't touch that switch." The electrician warned us \_\_\_\_\_

### REPORTED OFFERS

Speaker's offer	Reporting verbs		Reported offers
"Will you stay for lunch?" "Would you like a drink?"	He asked	if	<b>I <i>would</i></b> stay for lunch. <b>I <i>would</i></b> like a drink.
"Shall I fax the information to them?"	She asked She wanted to know	if/ whether	she <b><i>should fax</i></b> the information to them.
		whether	<b><i>to fax</i></b> the information to them.

**Exercise 32.** Report these offers. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example: "Would you like some tea?" my friend asked. My friend asked if I would like some tea.*

1. "Will you go out at the weekend?" he asked Daisy.
2. "Will you have another biscuit, Dave?" she asked.
3. "Would you like to stay with us?" Mrs. Steadman asked me.
4. "Would you like to see my holiday photographs?" she asked.
5. "Would you like another piece of cake?" my mother asked Mrs. Black.
6. "Will you come to my party on Saturday?" James asked.
7. "Would you like to eat in the hotel or in a restaurant?" she asked.
8. "Will you have a holiday with me?" Tom asked his girlfriend.

**Exercise 33.** Report each offer in two ways.

*Example: "Shall I invite your girlfriend to the party?" my sister asked.*

*My sister asked if/whether she should invite my girlfriend to the party.*

*My sister wanted to know whether to invite my girlfriend to the party.*

1. "Shall I heat the food for you?" my mother asked.
2. "Shall I leave a message for him?" the secretary asked.
3. "Shall I invite them to dinner?" she asked.
4. "Shall I open the window?" Terry asked.
5. "Shall I make you some coffee?" he asked.
6. "Shall I post the letter for you?" my friend asked.
7. "Shall I help you?" the teacher asked.
8. "Shall I drive you home?" Sally's husband asked.

### REPORTED REQUESTS

Speaker's request	Reporting Verb	Reported request
" <b>Will</b> you pass me the salt?" " <b>Would</b> you turn on the radio, please?"	He asked (me)	<i>to pass</i> him the salt. <i>to turn</i> on the radio.

**Exercise 34.** Report these requests. Make all the necessary changes.

*Example: "Would you check the bill for me, please?" he asked me.*

*He asked me to check the bill for him.*

1. "Would you pass me the suitcase, please?" she asked me.
2. "Will you take the children to school for me?" she asked my mother.
3. "Would you talk more quietly, please?" she asked the children.
4. "Would you move your car, please?" he asked the man.

5. "Will you pass my cup, please?" Ted asked me.
6. "Would you check the oil for me, please?" he asked the mechanic.
7. "Would you turn the car engine off, please?" the policeman asked me.
8. "Would you do me a favour?" she asked her friend.

## REVIEW OF REPORTED SPEECH

**Exercise 35.** Report these sentences. Make all the necessary changes.

1. "Did you enjoy the film?" I asked him.
2. "Switch off the TV," she told me.
3. "My parents had gone to bed," she said.
4. "Are you French?" they asked me.
5. "We're going into town," they said.
6. "Don't touch the wire," he warned me.
7. "I was on holiday in June," he told her.
8. "We won't be home late," we told them.
9. "I've posted the letters," I said.
10. "I haven't got any money," he told me.
11. "I passed my driving test last year," he told his boss.
12. "I can't type," I told them.
13. "Where do you work?" I asked her.
14. "Have the passports ready, please," the customs officer told us.
15. "I worked as a civil servant four years ago," Jack told me.
16. "Will you join me for a drink?" he asked.
17. "I must go to the bank tomorrow," he said.
18. "Had John done all the ironing by the time you came home?" my mother asked me.
19. "Will this car do 140 kilometres an hour?" I asked the mechanic.
20. "There's a big match on TV next Monday," he said.
21. "Would you like a lift into town?" Sam asked.
22. "They were here two months ago," Tim's mother said.
23. "I'm going to the cinema tonight," he said.
24. "Has she been working here long?" the manager wanted to know.
25. "Shall I contact the manager?" she asked.
26. "I'm early, aren't I?" she didn't know.
27. "Will you post this for me on the way to work?" Kevin asked.
28. "Don't be late, Jack," Jack's father told him.
29. "Don't ever enter my study," he told them.
30. "Would you sit down?" the interviewer asked.
31. "How are you?" he wanted to know.

32. "Your letter arrived yesterday," my brother told me.
33. "By the end of this week, they won't have done this, will they?" I asked.
34. "I'll tell her the news on Wednesday," he said.
35. "Whose painting will win the competition?" he asked.

**Exercise 36.** Rewrite each sentence as direct speech.

*Example:* Thomas told Ian he would see him the following day.

*"I'll see you tomorrow, Ian," said Thomas.*

1. Sally told her children their swimming things were not there.
2. Derek told me my letter had arrived the day before.
3. Peter told Leslie he hadn't been at home that morning.
4. Martha told Phil to phone her the following day.
5. Jack told Paul he was leaving that afternoon.
6. Kate told Steve she would see him that evening.
7. Dave told Sarah he had lost his lighter the night before.
8. The police officer told Sam he couldn't park there.
9. My mother asked me if I would stay for lunch.
10. David wanted to know where Carol had been.

## REPORTED CONVERSATIONS

- When we report a conversation we usually interpret it and report only its main points

*"You did enjoy the play, didn't you?" Jane asked.*

*"I'm not quite sure, " David said.*

*"I thought Anne Brown's performance was brilliant!" "Well, I didn't like it at all, " David replied.*

*"Didn't you ?" Jane asked.*

=> *When Jane asked David if he (had) enjoyed the play, he replied that he wasn't sure. But Jane found Anna Brown's performance brilliant, and was surprised to hear that David hadn't liked it at all.*

- We use different reporting verbs to interpret a conversation:

admit	boast	explain	offer	repeat
advise	complain	inform *	promise	reply
agree	confess	inquire	reassure	suggest
announce	demand	invite	refuse	etc.
apologise	deny	insist	remark	
beg*	doubt	note	remind*	

\* Verbs that always require an indirect object.



"You really must keep to your diet, Mrs. Jones, if you 're serious to lose weight," Dr Patrick said.

"You haven't been keeping to it, have you?"

"Well, I...er...", Mrs Jones murmured.

"Have you or haven't you ? "

"Well, I have occasionally had a bit extra. "

"What do you mean?"

"Oh, a cream cake or two."

=> Dr Patrick told Mrs. Jones that she must keep to her diet if she was serious to lose weight. When Dr Patrick **inquired** if she had been keeping to it, she **hesitated** and **murmured** something in reply. After Dr Patrick had **repeated** her question, Mrs Jones **confessed** that she had occasionally had a bit extra. When Dr Patrick asked her to explain what she meant, she **admitted** that she meant a cream cake or two.

**Exercise 37.** Put a form of one of the verbs from the box into the space in each sentence.

*Example:* "No, it's not true, I didn't steal the money!"

Carla *denied* that she had stolen the money.

deny	refuse	complain	remind	confess	
insist	promise	boast	agree	offer	doubt

1. "Don't forget to post my letter, will you, Mary?"  
Helen \_\_\_\_\_ Mary to post her letter.
2. "I don't really think it'll snow tomorrow."  
Diana \_\_\_\_\_ whether it would snow the following day.
3. "Don't worry, Vanessa, I'll bring your book back."  
Sue \_\_\_\_\_ Martin she would bring his book back.
4. "No, no, you really must have another drink!"  
Dick \_\_\_\_\_ that I should have another drink.
5. "Right. I'll take the brown pair."  
Jack \_\_\_\_\_ to take the brown pair.
6. "No, sorry, I don't want to lend you my camera."  
Alex \_\_\_\_\_ to lend me his camera.
7. "It was me who stole the money."  
James \_\_\_\_\_ his crime to the court.
8. "It's not fair. They never invite me to parties."  
The girl \_\_\_\_\_ to her mother that they never invited her to parties.

9. "I can play ten musical instruments."  
She \_\_\_\_\_ that she could play ten musical instruments.
10. "If you like, I'll help you do the decorating, Tim"  
Ann \_\_\_\_\_ Tim to help him do the decorating.

**Exercise 38.** Two-in-one stories. Sort out two stories as quickly as you can, then re-tell them. Do not use direct speech.

**'Aesop's Fable'/'The Company Chairman'**

1. A few hours later a mean looking traveller came down the road, and he too stopped and asked Aesop, "Tell me, my friend, what are the people of Athens like?"
2. He looked at them. "Gentlemen, I have something I must say: half of you are idiots."
3. Aesop, the Greek writer of fables, was sitting by the road one day when a friendly traveller asked him, "What sort of people live in Athens?"
4. The man frowned and replied, "I'm from Argos and there the people are unfriendly, mean, deceitful and vicious. They're thieves and murderers, all of them."
5. One day a company chairman got very angry with his board of directors.
6. Aesop replied, "Tell me where you come from and what sort of people live there, and I'll tell you what sort of people you'll find in Athens."
7. At this Aesop answered, "I'm happy to tell you, my dear friend, that you'll find the people of Athens much the same."
8. "Very well," the chairman said, "I withdraw it—half of your are not idiots."
9. The man smiled and answered, "I came from Argos, and the people there are all friendly, generous and warm-hearted. I love them all."
10. One of the directors stood up and banged on the table. "I demand that you withdraw that last observation, Mr. Chairman."
11. Again Aesop replied, "Tell me where you come from and what people are like there and I will tell you what the people are like in Athens."
12. "I'm afraid you'll find the people of Athens much the same," was Aesop's reply.

**'The Farmer'/'The Invitation'**

1. "Well," said the farmer, scratching his chin, "I'll tell you what we do."
2. "Why do I have to use my elbow and my foot?" asked his friend.
3. A man invited his friend and explained to him where he lived.
4. The man went back to the car with a puzzled look on his face and said to his wife, "I think he is crazy."
5. "Come to the third floor," he said, "and where you see the letter B on the

door, push the button with your elbow and when the door opens, put your foot against it.”

6. “We eat what we can and what we can’t eat we can.”
7. A curious tourist was passing a huge field of carrots alongside the road when he saw a farmer. He stopped and asked him, “What do you do with this large crop?”
8. “He said they ate what they could and what they couldn’t they could.”
9. “Well,” exclaimed the man, “You’re not going to come empty-handed, are you?”

### **‘The Railway Ticket’/‘No Teeth’**

1. There were eight of us in the carriage, and soon the railway inspector punched seven tickets.
2. Some weeks later Peter met his friend in the street, and the friend asked him, “What’s happened?”
3. “All tickets, please!” said the railway inspector when he appeared at the door of the carriage.
4. Peter had to join the army but he didn’t want to, so he asked his friend, “What shall I do?”
5. “Funny thing, absence of mind,” said the helpful traveller when the inspector had gone.
6. But the old man, who looked very unhappy, was still searching through his pockets.
7. His friend said, “Well, why don’t you go to the dentist and ask him to pull out all your teeth? You won’t get past the medical then.”
8. “You haven’t lost your ticket,” said the man next to him, helpfully. “You’re holding it in your teeth!”
9. So he was, and the inspector looked very pleased as he quickly punched the ticket.
10. Peter, who had no teeth left, mumbled, “The officer said I was no good for the army—I’ve got flat feet!”
11. “Absence of mind?” said the old man. “I was chewing off last week’s date!”

## **GRAMMAR IN CONTEXT**

### **Exercise 39.** Answer the following questions

1. Do you prefer to watch films in the cinema or at home on television or video? Explain why.
2. Do you like watching TV?
3. Do you usually have a meal when your TV is on or do you just sit and watch it?

4. How many hours a day do you watch TV?
5. What's your favourite programme? Do you always try to stay at home and watch it?
6. Which TV programmes do you not like? Why?
7. Who is your favourite TV presenter?
8. What do you think of commercials?
9. Which films do you like: comedies, thrillers, action films, etc? Why?
10. What do you think makes a good film? (the director, the cast, the script, the camera work, sound effects, etc.)
11. How do you choose a film to see: do you look through film magazines or newspapers, listen to the radio or just rely on your friends' opinion?
12. Most people, young and old, like cartoons. How can you explain the phenomenon?
13. Who is your favourite actor (actress)? What do you like about him (her)?
14. How easy is it for you to get used to a new role of your favourite actor if it is quite different from the previous ones?
15. Is there any director whose films you never miss? Why do you like his (her) films?
16. Is there any name in the world of cinema that can ensure the success of the film?
17. When they advertise a film they usually draw the viewers' attention to the cast. Do you think that an all-star cast is a guarantee of a good film? Give your reasons.
18. What's your attitude to a screen version of books? Do you prefer to see it before or after reading the book? In which case is your disappointment greater?
19. Which films do you find disappointing of late? What do you think makes them poor production?
20. What international film festivals can you name? Which award is the most prestigious one?
21. Most foreign films that you watch on the video are undubbed. Some people just hate watching films with an interpreter. What about you?
22. How often do you watch undubbed films in English? Do they really help you in studying English?
23. There are quite a lot of video English learning courses. Have you ever watched them?
24. How often do you go to the theatre? Which plays do you prefer?
25. There was a gloomy forecast that the attendance of theatre audience would drop because of television. What's your opinion?
26. Modern theatre differs greatly from the one it used to be some time ago.

In what way? What do you think—are these differences for better or for worse? Give your reasons.

27. Do you ever go to the opera?

28. ‘New Opera’ and ‘Gelicon Opera’ are the most popular Moscow opera houses nowadays. Can you explain why? In what way are they different?

29. Do you like ballet? Which ballet do you prefer, classical or modern?

30. Have you ever seen performances of modern French and American ballet companies? What’s your impression?

**Exercise 40.** Speak about your impressions of one of the TV programmes/plays/films you’ve seen recently.

What is it about?

Are there any well-known people/actors?

Is there anything special/unusual about the programme/production? Where is it on? When was it on? Who is the presenter/producer?

*Make detailed comments on the successful and unsuccessful features of the TV programme/play/film. Give reasons for your comments.*

*Use the following expressions:*

The TV programme/play/film tells the story of... .

The story is based on...

The message is...

This is the most wonderful/exciting/awful TV programme/play/film that has ever come out.

The TV programme/play/film deals with.../the plot centres around...

The film/plot/scene/situation is thrilling/exciting/fascinating/disgusting/laughable/ powerful/astonishing.

The TV programme/play/film is above praise/beneath criticism.

The TV programme/play/film left/produced a deep and lasting impression upon...

The central figure is...

The actors created true-to-life images.

The actors were (not) at their best.

N. was the most marvellous actor I had ever seen.

While watching the TV programme/play/film, I was most impressed by...

It’s not a TV programme/play/film to everyone’s taste.

The TV programme/play/film was a hit with the public/was a complete flop.

The TV programme/play/film keeps the audience in suspense from beginning to end.

I can’t say I enjoyed myself very much, for the TV programme/play/film bored me.

The TV programme/play/film is certainly (not) worth seeing.

The play/stage/screen version of... is a success/failure.

**Exercise 41.** Work in pairs and discuss the plays (films) you have seen. One of the speakers must tell his friend about a play (film) he liked, the other about a play (film) he disliked.

*Example:* A: I've seen a film that was a hit with the public. It's above praise. For one thing, the camerawork was fantastic...

B: I was less fortunate. The musical I saw was a complete flop. The leading actor was miscast.

**Exercise 42.** Agree or disagree

1. It is a mere waste of time to watch TV.
2. TV is extremely helpful for education.
3. One can learn a language by TV.
4. Violence on television can lead young people to regard it as acceptable behaviour.
5. In the 20th century people are much more fascinated by theatre than by cinema.
6. Cinema is an art of illusion.
7. Opera and ballet are equally popular in this country.
8. In this country there are more theatres than opera houses.
9. Amateur theatre is very popular in this country.
10. A good cast makes a good play (film).
11. Screen versions of books prevent people from reading.
12. For most theatregoers/cinemagoers there is no problem in getting tickets for a good play/opera/ballet/film.

**Exercise 43.** Speak about

1. Cinema and theatre in modern art.
2. Your favourite theatrical genre.
3. Your favourite genre of films.
4. Films for entertainment and education.
5. Your favourite TV programme.
6. Bad effects of TV on children.
7. TV programmes for youngsters in your country.
8. Your favourite TV presenter/commentator/newscaster/actor (actress)/singer/ballet dancer/playwright.
9. Plays by English playwrights staged at the theatres of your country.
10. The repertoire of your favourite theatre.
11. Your last visit to the opera house.
12. International film festivals.

## TEST YOURSELF (Unit 5)

#1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. the men/asked/they/were/the policeman/doing/what.
2. Sheila/by the time/had/gone/Chris/back/got.
3. the manager/already/had/said/he/to/he/spoken.
4. late/not/be/Mary's father/to/her/told.
5. come/by that time/had n't/we/yet/to/up/the answer/with/the problem.

#2 Complete the second sentence so as that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Use the word given and other words to complete each sentence. You must use between **two and five** words. **Do not change the word given.**

1. "Would you like to spend the weekend with me?" she said to Kate.

**invited**

She \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend with her.

2. I found these photographs by chance the other day.

**came**

I \_\_\_\_\_ these photographs the other day.

3. "I haven't had anything to eat since yesterday," she said.

4. **she**

She said that \_\_\_\_\_ anything to eat since the day before.

5. "If the missing climbers don't appear, we'll have to send out a search party," he said. **they**

He said that if the missing climbers \_\_\_\_\_ have to send out a search party.

6. "Don't worry about me if I'm late," she told her husband.

**her**

She told her husband \_\_\_\_\_ if she was late.

7. "I'm afraid I haven't had time to read it," he said.

**admitted**

He \_\_\_\_\_ had time to read it.

8. "Come with me to France!" he said to her.

**begged**

He \_\_\_\_\_ him to France.

9. "I expect there will be a lot of people here tomorrow," he said.

**next**

He said he expected there would be a lot \_\_\_\_\_ day.

10. "You mustn't work so hard in view of what the doctor told you yesterday," he said. **couldn't**

He said that I \_\_\_\_\_ view of what the doctor had told me the

day before.

11. How can you bear so much traffic noise?

**put**

How can you \_\_\_\_\_ traffic noise?

12. "I'm not going out in the weather like this," Liz said.

**refused**

Liz \_\_\_\_\_ out in the weather like that.

13. "I was walking home when I saw the accident," John said

**home**

John said that he had \_\_\_\_\_ saw the accident.

14. "Don't stand here!" she warned me.

**to**

She \_\_\_\_\_ stand there.



# SUPPLEMENTARY

Translate from Russian into English.

## UNIT 1

1. Позвони мне сегодня вечером. Я буду дома.
2. Родители Кейт уезжают завтра утром. Они отправляются 8-и часовым поездом.
3. У меня очень много работы. Я закончу ее не раньше полуночи.
4. Никогда не одалживай ему деньги. Иначе ты их никогда больше не увидишь.
5. У них слишком много багажа. Думаю, они возьмут такси.
6. Анна не любит ходить на вечеринки. Не думаю, что она примет наше предложение.
7. Экзамен будет очень трудным. Ты думаешь мы его сдадим?
8. Я собираюсь позвонить другу в Нью-Йорк. Как ты думаешь, сколько это будет стоить?
9. Моя сестра очень ленивая. Она не хочет учиться и работать. Как ты думаешь, когда она поумнеет?
10. Лили и Барбара приезжают в субботу. Как ты думаешь, сколько они здесь пробудут?
11. Мой друг, вероятно, поедет учиться за рубеж.
12. Не торопись. Наш лектор часто опаздывает. И в этот раз лекция, вероятно, вовремя не начнется.
13. Вряд ли Майк скоро получит хорошо оплачиваемую работу.
14. Ты должен познакомиться с Сюзен. Она такая красивая и умная! Тебе она, определенно, понравится.
15. — Ваш брат будет пытаться поступить в институт в этом году? — Да.
16. — Вы откроете счет в этом банке?  
— Нет. Ни за что. Я ему не доверяю.
17. — Анжела после свадьбы будет жить со своими родителями?  
— Нет. Они будут снимать квартиру.
18. — Ты сегодня куда-нибудь пойдёшь?  
— В такую погоду! Нет, я останусь дома.
19. Мне не нравится эта телепередача. Переключить на другую?
20. У меня болит голова. Обсудим эту проблему в другой раз?
21. Хочешь пить? Принести тебе сок?

22. Он получит степень бакалавра в этом году или в следующем?
23. — Боб, мы пойдем в клуб или в кино?  
— Куда хочешь.
24. — Ты когда освободишься?  
— Через полчаса.
25. — Куда они поедут этим летом?  
— На море, как обычно.
26. — Сколько потребуется времени, чтобы добраться до его родного города?  
— Поездом — около двух дней, а самолетом — чуть больше трех часов.
27. — Папа, мне скучно. Что мне делать?  
— Что хочешь и оставь меня, пожалуйста, в покое!
28. — Сколько лет будет миссис Росс в этом году?  
— Вы не поверите, девяносто!
29. — Как часто ты будешь навещать нас, Джонни?  
— Я проведу все каникулы дома. Я обещаю.
30. — Сколько будет стоить обучение в Гарвардском университете?  
— Не знаю, но думаю, недешево.
31. — Это туристическое агентство предлагает очень интересные поездки. Какой тур вы выберете?  
— Мне бы хотелось что-нибудь экзотическое, например, Таиланд.
32. — Кто выиграет чемпионат мира по футболу в этом году?  
— Возможно, Бразилия.
33. — Мистер Джексон уезжает в командировку через два дня.  
— А кто закажет билеты и гостиницу?  
— Его секретарь. Кто еще?
34. Что будет со мной через десять лет? Буду ли я богат? Счастлив? Будет ли у меня интересная работа? Будет ли у меня семья и дети? Ну что ж, время покажет!
35. — Я уверен, Том согласится с нашим предложением, не так ли?  
— Да, определенно.
36. — Ты никому не расскажешь об этом, не так ли?  
— Нет, не расскажу. Не волнуйся.
37. — Не пропадай, ладно? Я буду скучать.  
— Я буду писать тебе длинные письма и звонить каждую неделю. Договорились?
38. — Мы поедem на поезде, ладно?  
— Хорошо, давай поедem на поезде. Но в следующий раз мы полетим на самолете.

39. — Я не хочу снова обсуждать с ним этот вопрос. Это не поможет, не так ли?  
— Не поможет. Я знаю.
40. Давай сегодня пообедаем в ресторане, хорошо?
41. Пит, я делаю очень сложный перевод. Не выразишь музыку?
42. — Я помогу тебе вымыть посуду, хорошо?  
— Да, пожалуйста.
43. Этим летом Денис будет путешествовать автостопом. Ему не понадобится много денег, не так ли?
44. Мои друзья поедут на каникулы домой. Я тоже.
45. Поль никогда не забудет замечательную поездку в Париж. Грета тоже.
46. Тед получит степень бакалавра через три года. Я тоже.
47. Сестренка моего друга пойдёт в школу этой осенью. И моя тоже.
48. Говорят, что этой зимой будет много снега.
49. В ближайшем будущем Москва станет ещё красивее.
50. Лекции мистера Кларка очень скучные. Так что завтра на его лекции будет немного народу.
51. В субботу занятий не будет. У нас свободный день.
52. — Сегодня по телевизору будут какие-нибудь спортивные передачи?  
— Да, конечно.
53. — В эту пятницу семинар или лекция?  
— Семинар.
54. Ты говоришь, завтрашняя вечеринка ни на что не похожа. А что там будет? Сколько там будет народу? Там будут только наши друзья или еще кто-нибудь?
55. Когда будут следующие Олимпийские игры?
56. — Этой весной будет много дождей?  
— Надеюсь, что нет.
57. — Ведь в будущем не будет войн?  
— Думаю, что нет. Люди станут мудрее и добрее.
58. — В климате нашей планеты произойдут большие изменения, не так ли?  
— Боюсь, что да.
59. Завтра в это время у мистера Финли будет пресс-конференция.
60. Молли едет в Лондон на три дня. Она остановится у своей подруги.
61. Сегодня вечером Энтони не будет смотреть по телевизору ток шоу. Он будет смотреть новый фильм.
62. Везет же Марку! Завтра в это время он не будет сидеть на лекции. Он будет гулять по Нью-Йорку со своими американскими друзьями.
63. — Ты будешь играть в волейбол сегодня после занятий?  
— Нет, я буду готовиться к занятиям.

64. В июне она будет сдавать TOEFL или GRE?
65. Как они будут путешествовать: на поезде или на самолете?
66. — Что вы будете делать в это время через неделю?  
— То же, что и сейчас. Я буду учиться.
67. — Сколько зарубежных гостей прибывает завтра?  
— Пятнадцать или двадцать.
68. — Когда самолет приземляется в Хитроу?  
— Около полуночи.
69. — Какое платье она оденет на выпускной вечер?  
— Самое красивое.
70. — Почему вы будете работать завтра вечером?  
— Потому что послезавтра наша фирма подписывает очень важный контракт.
71. — Кто будет мыть посуду и убирать квартиру после гостей?  
— Я, конечно.
72. — Сколько времени Ваш босс пробудет за границей? — Два или три дня, не больше.
73. — Сколько денег Джулия будет зарабатывать на новой работе?  
— Довольно много.
74. — Какие экзамены вы будете сдавать на степень магистра?  
— Я еще сам не знаю.
75. — Где он будет читать лекции в следующем году?  
— В Лондонском университете.
76. — Чьи родственники приезжают к тебе сегодня?  
— Это родственники моей жены.
77. — Я позвоню тебе в субботу утром в 10 часов. Ты ведь не будешь спать?  
— Конечно, буду. Это же мой выходной!
78. — Ты ведь будешь жить в этом общежитии ближайшие четыре года, да?  
— Нет, на четвертом курсе я буду жить в другом общежитии.
79. — Завтра в это время Сэм и Дон будут пролетать над Тихим Океаном, не так ли?  
— Да. Правда, здорово?
80. — У тебя ведь не будет лекции в 12.30, нет?  
— Нет. У нас будет двухчасовой перерыв.
81. — Завтра Рита будет упаковывать вещи весь вечер?  
— Думаю, что да. У нее очень много багажа.
82. Том, у тебя усталый вид. Присядь, я сварю тебе кофе.
83. Боюсь, что мы еще долго не увидим своего шефа. Он пробудет в Америке два месяца.

84. Через несколько лет мой друг будет аспирантом. Он будет учиться в Массачусетском технологическом университете.
85. — Сегодня в 8 часов в нашем клубе выступит моя любимая группа. Ты придешь?  
— К сожалению, нет. Сегодня вечером я буду занят.
86. Как только Боб узнает результаты тестирования, он нам сообщит.
87. Когда у Ольги будут все необходимые документы для выезда за границу, она свяжется со своими родственниками в Канаде.
88. После того как я получу степень бакалавра, я постараюсь поступить в один из зарубежных университетов и получить там степень магистра.
89. — Ты когда улетаешь?  
— Через два дня. Я зайду к вам до отъезда.
90. Дети Джулии будут смотреть телевизор, пока она не скажет им, что пора ложиться спать.
91. — Завтра утром, когда вы будете уезжать, будет дождь.  
— Ну и что? Дождь на дороге — хорошая примета!
92. — Макс, а где твоя бабушка?  
— Она в саду и будет работать там, пока не стемнеет.
93. Будет трудно найти работу в англоговорящей стране, если вы не будете бегло говорить по-английски.
94. Если ты не выспишься перед таким сложным экзаменом, ты его вряд ли сдашь.
95. — Отец, тебе нужна машина сегодня вечером?  
— Нет. Можешь ее взять, но только если будешь осторожен за рулем.
96. Если я сдам этот экзамен на “отлично”, я устрою вечеринку.
97. Анита будет учиться на дневном отделении, только если будет получать стипендию.
98. Только если наша фирма подпишет выгодный контракт, мы расплатимся со старыми долгами.
99. Только если у вас будут хорошие рекомендации и опыт работы в области маркетинга, они предложат вам работу в этой фирме.
100. Бетти с мужем поедут в круиз по Средиземному морю, только если накопят достаточно денег.
101. Если мы опоздаем на последнюю электричку, мы можем переночевать у моих родственников в Москве.
102. Я возьму зонт на случай, если будет дождь.
103. Если ты спешишь, я могу тебя подвезти. Я еду в центр.
104. Сегодня воскресенье. Олив собирается испечь яблочный пирог на случай, если к ней заглянет кто-нибудь из ее друзей.
105. Это его двоюродные братья. И тот, и другой работают на таможне.

106. — Если встретишь Анну или Риту, скажи, что билеты у меня.  
— Не волнуйся. Я их обеих увижу сегодня на лекции.
107. В нашем микрорайоне два магазина. Оба этих магазина — супермаркеты.
108. Садитесь на 24й или 39й . Любой автобус довезет вас до центра.
109. — А кто-нибудь из родителей Пабло говорит по-английски?  
— Нет, только по-испански.
110. Тед и Рик — опытные путешественники. Любой из них поможет вам выбрать интересный маршрут.
111. Хотя Ларри и Дерек принадлежат к одной тайной организации, ни один не знает всей правды о другом.
112. Мы с братом любим путешествовать. Но ни один из нас не любит летать на самолете.
113. Оливер и его жена — киноактеры. У них сын и дочь. Но никто из детей не хочет сниматься в кино.
114. Лиза и Элен работают в турагентстве и очень этим гордятся. Любая из них скажет, что их агентство — самое лучшее! Им часто приходится выезжать за границу и встречаться с зарубежными партнерами. Обе девушки говорят по- немецки и по-испански, но ни одна из них не знает греческого. Так что когда они бывают в Греции в командировке, они обычно общаются на английском.
115. Боб собирается в двухнедельную командировку в Квебек (Канада). Ему там придется говорить и на английском языке и на французском.
116. — Куда вы поедете этим летом в отпуск? В Италию или Испанию?  
— У меня нет достаточно денег, чтобы оплатить дорожные расходы на поездку в Европу. Так что я не поеду ни в Италию, ни в Испанию.
117. — Ты полетишь на самолете , как обычно?  
— Нет, на этот раз я поеду либо на поезде, либо на автобусе международного сообщения. В наши дни путешествовать на самолете — слишком дорогое удовольствие!
118. И Сюзан, и Мэри собираются специализироваться по биологии.
119. Ни Том, ни его друзья не любят путешествовать автостопом.
120. И Барбара, и ее дети предпочитают проводить отпуск в горах.
121. Ни у моих родителей, ни у моей сестры нет машины.
122. Если придут либо Луиза, либо ее младший брат они, наверняка, захотят посмотреть сериал “Улица Сезам”.
123. Если позвонит или Бренда, или ее родственники скажите, что я буду не раньше 8 вечера.
124. — Как часто вы слушаете BBC?  
— Каждый день.

125. — Какую из зарубежных информационных программ вы считаете лучшей? – CNN.
126. Не знаю почему, но из всех языков программирования мой брат предпочитает BASIC.
127. Говорят, не в деньгах счастье, но и без денег счастья нет!
128. Наша новая секретарша очень невнимательная. Ей приходится перепечатывать документы по нескольку раз, и все равно, там, как правило, есть ошибки. Думаю, у директора скоро лопнет терпение, и он ее уволит.
129. — Какой самый дорогой драгоценный металл? Золото?  
— Не знаю. По-моему, платина.

## UNIT 2

1. Осторожно! Этот перекресток очень опасный. Несколько дней назад здесь разбились две машины.
2. Вчера Бену нужно было подготовиться к семинару по физике. Так что он лег спать в два часа ночи!
3. Эмили начала заниматься живописью с пяти лет. Вскоре она уже получила первую премию на конкурсе юных художников.
4. Когда Стиву было 12 лет, он мечтал стать знаменитым детективом: в то время он увлекался романами Агаты Кристи.
5. Вчера вечером я отмечал день рождения. Меня пришли поздравить все мои институтские друзья.
6. Мэри родилась, когда ее родители были еще студентами. А в 40 лет ее мама стала бабушкой, самой молодой бабушкой из всех, кого она тогда знала.
7. Извини, что не позвонил вчера. Я забыл, у меня просто не было времени: обсуждение нового проекта затянулось до 11 часов вечера. Я не хотел беспокоить тебя так поздно.
8. — Говорят, что ты на прошлой неделе нашел бумажник. Это правда?  
— Я не нашел, а потерял свой собственный. Мало того, в нем была вся моя стипендия.
9. Фонд Растроповича, который он учредил несколько лет назад, оказывает финансовую поддержку талантливым музыкантам.
10. Когда цены на авиабилеты повысились, число авиапассажиров резко сократилось. Не ненадолго: ведь для многих из них (особенно для бизнесменов) самолет — не роскошь, а средство передвижения.
11. Миссис Роберте обожала преподавать в младших классах. Каждый раз, когда она задавала вопрос, все дети сразу же поднимали руки. Хотя их ответы и не всегда были правильными.

12. Полиция так и не смогла задержать грабителя. Его, правда, ранили, но ему удалось скрыться.
13. Ну и денек! Когда Джон вернулся домой, единственным его желанием было поскорее лечь спать. Он поставил будильник на 7 утра и заснул.
14. Любимой игрушкой Марка в детстве была механическая железная дорога. Когда отец заводил ее, и крошечные вагончики начинали свой путь по рельсам, счастливее Марка не было никого на свете.
15. Позавчера Лорен купила новые шторы. Она повесила их в гостиной.
16. Поезд прибыл по расписанию, так что ему не пришлось долго ждать.
17. Когда Ник поступал в институт, ему не пришлось сдавать вступительные экзамены. У него было только собеседование.
18. Когда Лаура закончила институт, у нее были отличные оценки и прекрасные характеристики. Ей не пришлось долго искать работу.
19. — А что случилось с тем известным преступником?  
— Его повесили за убийство.
20. В субботу Дженни до позднего вечера убирала квартиру. Она так устала, что в воскресенье все утро пролежала в постели.
21. Когда маленькая Нэнси заболела, миссис Баркинс вызвала врача. Врач пришел в тот же день, но вел он себя очень странно: не вымыл руки, не снял шапку, поставил свой портфель на столик с лекарствами, а пальто положил прямо на кровать Нэнси! Миссис Баркли потеряла дар речи. Она была просто в шоке.
22. Когда Брайан в первый раз сыграл в рулетку, ему повезло: он выиграл 1000 долларов. С тех пор все свободное время он проводил в казино. Жене и детям он лгал, что у него много сверхурочной работы. Брайан проигрывал крупные суммы денег, ему пришлось продать дом, чтобы расплатиться с долгами, он потерял работу, и от него ушла жена.
23. — Тебе нравилась математика, когда ты училась в школе?  
— Нет, я ее просто ненавидела.
24. — Твой начальник был вчера на работе?  
— Да, у него была встреча с важным клиентом.
25. — Ты сделал много ошибок во вчерашней контрольной?  
— Боюсь, что да.
26. — В прошлом году у тебя был тот же сосед по комнате?  
— Да, а что?
27. — Вы учились в обычной школе или специализированной?  
— В обычной, но там был очень высокий уровень преподавания.
28. — Ты был вчера на первой лекции или проспал, как обычно?  
— Представь себе, был!
29. — Ты обедал в час или два?  
— Да я вообще не обедал!



30. Тебе пришлось изменить свой образ жизни, когда ты стал студентом?
31. Ему часто приходилось заниматься по ночам?
32. — Ей пришлось жить в общежитии?  
— Нет, она жила у родственников.
33. — Вы добрались до аэропорта на общественном транспорте, или вам пришлось взять такси?  
— Нам пришлось заказать такси: ведь это был ночной рейс.
34. Ваш сын изучал иностранный язык только в школе, или ему пришлось посещать специальные языковые курсы?
35. — Вам пришлось помогать детям, когда они учились в институте, или они жили на стипендию?  
— На стипендию!? Мне приходилось посылать им деньги каждый месяц!
36. — Что ты делал в субботу вечером?  
— Смотрел по телевизору футбольный матч.
37. — Почему вы с Антоном так рано ушли вчера с вечеринки?  
— Там было слишком скучно.
38. — Какой школьный предмет ты любил больше всего?  
— Физику, конечно.
39. — Когда Боб закончил университет?  
— Два года назад.
40. — Какое красивое платье! Сколько оно стоило?  
— Нисколько. Я его сама сшила.
41. — Как давно ты встречался со школьными друзьями?  
— Всего лишь неделю назад на вечере выпускников нашей школы.
42. — Куда Джек ездил прошлым летом?  
— Он путешествовал автостопом по Европе.
43. — Какие книги ваша дочь читала в детстве?  
— Сказки и рассказы о животных.
44. — Как часто Нелли навещала свою бабушку в больнице?  
— Каждый день.
45. — Сколько тебе потребовалось времени, чтобы накопить деньги на компьютер?  
— Мне его подарили родители.
46. — Чей адрес хотела узнать Элис?  
— Стивена. Он на той неделе переехал на новую квартиру.
47. — Как ты добрался до института? На автобусе?  
— Нет, меня подвез приятель.
48. — А где они останавливались когда ездили в Америку? В отеле?  
— Нет, у своих друзей.

49. — Сколько школ сменил ваш сын за последние два года?  
— Это — третья, и ему здесь очень нравится.
50. — Когда родился Шекспир? Ты знаешь?  
— Разумеется. В 1564 году.
51. — За кого вышла замуж твоя сестра?  
— За известного политика.
52. — Кто сообщил тебе эту новость?  
— Один из наших сотрудников.
53. — Что ты подарил жене на день рождения?  
— Посудомоечную машину.
54. — Что случилось с Адой? Она ужасно выглядит.  
— У нее родители погибли в автокатастрофе.
55. — С кем это ты вчера целый вечер разговаривал по телефону?  
— Со своей невестой.
56. — Сколько экзаменов ему пришлось перездать прошлой зимой?  
— По-моему, один или два.
57. — Какие лекции вам пришлось посещать в прошлом семестре?  
— Я не ходил на лекции, только на семинары.
58. — Сколько времени Барбаре пришлось мыть посуду после вечеринки?  
— Недолго, ей помогли подружки.
59. — Как часто Максу приходилось пропускать занятия в школе?  
— Довольно часто: он очень много болел.
60. — Где ей пришлось работать после окончания института?  
— В рекламном агентстве.
61. — Когда вам пришлось поменять профессию?  
— Когда я переехал в Америку.
62. — Почему им пришлось продать машину?  
— Их сын собирается поступать в университет, а ведь высшее образование стоит недешево!
63. — Что пришлось делать Майку, когда он бросил институт?  
— Пойти служить в армию! Что еще?
64. — Ты опоздал на последний автобус, не так ли?  
— К сожалению, да. Мне пришлось взять такси.
65. — Они купили этот дом в прошлом году, не так ли?  
— Нет, два года тому назад.
66. — Их фирма не приняла наше предложение, не так ли?  
— Да. Они отказались с нами сотрудничать.
61. — У Молли не было проблем на новой работе, не так ли?  
— Нет, были. Но сейчас все в порядке.
62. — Ты ведь на прошлой неделе был в заграничной командировке, да?  
— Да, я ездил в Амстердам.

63. — Вы ведь интересовались политикой когда еще были студентом, да?  
— Нет, в то время меня интересовала только учеба.
64. — Вам ведь не было скучно на лекции, да?  
— Нет, конечно. Лекция была просто потрясающей.
65. — Джеф не был расстроен оценкой за контрольную работу, не так ли?  
— Нет, очень расстроился. Ведь ему нужна была только отличная оценка.
66. — Ведь им не пришлось ночевать в аэропорту?  
— К счастью, нет.
67. — Вам пришлось устроить вечеринку, когда ваша дочь закончила школу, не так ли?  
— Конечно.
68. — Преподавателю не пришлось объяснять это правило снова и снова, не так ли?  
— Нет, у него очень умные студенты.
69. — Стиву пришлось развестись с женой через год после свадьбы, не так ли?  
— Да. Это был неудачный брак.
70. Раньше Трент жил в собственном доме. Теперь, когда он потерял работу, он снимает крохотную однокомнатную квартиру.
71. Мне раньше не нравился мой новый сосед по комнате. Но сейчас я знаю, что он надежный друг и никогда меня не подведет.
72. Когда Марта была маленькой, она проводила каникулы в деревне, у бабушки. Она вставала в 6 часов и помогала ей подоить корову. Потом они обычно шли на кухню и завтракали. Все молочные продукты — масло, сметану и творог бабушка делала сама. Что могло быть лучше домашней еды!
73. Когда Элен и Терри поженились, они каждый вечер куда-нибудь ходили — в ресторан, на дискотеку или к друзьям. Теперь у них трое детей, и все вечера они проводят дома.
74. Мне никогда раньше не нравилось останавливаться в отелях. Я всегда предпочитал жить в палатке, на открытом воздухе. Но с возрастом я начал ценить комфорт.
75. — Какие домашние животные у тебя были в детстве?  
— Собака.
76. — Где вы жили до того, как переехали в Москву?  
— В небольшом провинциальном городе.
77. — Почему вы всегда недолюбливали Бобби?  
— Он был слишком самоуверенным и тщеславным.
78. — Кто обычно помогал матери по дому?  
— Я и моя сестра, а еще отец, правда, не часто.

79. — Чего вы больше всего боялись, когда были маленьким?  
— Грозы.
80. — Куда вы обычно ездили в отпуск?  
— На море.
81. — Сколько часов в день вы обычно работали на компьютере?  
— С утра до вечера!
82. — Чем вы интересовались в школе?  
— Биологией и химией.
83. — Сколько сигарет Денис обычно выкуривал в день?  
— Пачку или чуть больше.
84. — Каким спортом вы занимались в колледже?  
— Плаванием и теннисом.
85. — Что это за здание? Здесь раньше был кинотеатр, не так ли?  
— Да, а теперь — супермаркет.
86. — Ваш сын никогда не прогуливал занятия в школе, не так ли?  
— Нет, он был очень прилежным учеником.
87. — Вы посещали все лекции на первом курсе, не так ли?  
— Нет, только те, которые меня интересовали.
88. — Ты ведь раньше не тратил столько денег, не так ли?  
— Нет, тратил. Только раньше я тратил их на книги и развлечения, а теперь, в основном, на еду.
89. — Ведь раньше у каждого члена их семьи была своя машина, не так ли?  
— Да. Сейчас у них одна машина на всю семью, но зато, это Кадиллак.
90. Каждый раз, когда к ней приходила внучка, миссис Линсон угощала ее шоколадными конфетами.
91. Я очень удивлен, что Грег решил вступить в яхт-клуб. Ему никогда раньше не нравился парусный спорт.
92. Крис и Рой раньше встречались каждый день. Потом они поссорились и почти год друг с другом не разговаривали.
93. Барбара уже заперла дверь, когда зазвонил телефон.
94. В 10 часов вчера вечером они еще обсуждали условия договора.
95. Пока Памела готовила праздничный обед, ее муж убирал квартиру.
96. Новая машинистка была очень невнимательной. Она всегда делала массу ошибок.
97. День был просто чудесный. Ярко сияло солнце, пели птицы, а на небе не было ни облачка.
98. Вы не слушали, когда преподаватель объяснял новое грамматическое правило, поэтому и не можете перевести это предложение.
99. В старости миссис Грант часто жаловалась на боли в спине.

100. В это время в прошлом году я не сдавал экзамены, а катался на лыжах в горах.
101. — Ты вчера целый день ремонтировал машину?  
— Да. Но я так и не смог ничего сделать.
102. — Дети спали, когда вы пришли?  
— Нет, смотрели телевизор.
103. — Вы быстро ехали, когда произошла авария?  
— Нет, но я слишком поздно заметил встречную машину.
104. — Они ждали тебя весь вечер?  
— Да, я пришла около полуночи.
105. — Когда вы учились в институте, вы жили с родителями или в общежитии?  
— В общежитии. На дорогу домой и обратно уходило слишком много времени.
106. — Какое платье было на Сесили вчера — обычное или вечернее?  
— Вечернее. В конце концов, это же свадьба ее любимой сестры!
107. — С кем вы разговаривали, когда я вас вчера встретил?  
— С нашим новым соседом, мистером Оуэном.
108. — С какой скоростью ехал Рик, когда его остановила полиция?  
— 90 миль в час.
109. — Кто встречал вас на вокзале?  
— Жена и дети.
110. — Сколько денег в неделю зарабатывала Дебби на прошлой работе?  
— Практически ничего. Поэтому она и ушла оттуда.
111. — Почему ваш муж весь прошлый месяц работал сверхурочно?  
— Ему пришлось осваивать новое оборудование.
112. — Что ты читал, когда я позвонил?  
— “Тарри Поттера”.
113. — Когда вы пытались писать стихи?  
— Когда я был подростком.
114. — Где они были в субботу днем?  
— В торговом центре, делали покупки на всю неделю.
115. — Что искала полиция в его доме?  
— Наркотики и оружие.
116. — О чем ты думал, когда я тебя окликнул?  
— О завтрашнем семинаре.
117. — Что происходило вчера вечером у соседей? Шум был ужасный.  
— У них была вечеринка.
118. — Что она делала, когда пришли гости?  
— Накрывала на стол.

119. — Куда они торопились, когда мы их встретили?  
— А тебе не все равно?
120. — Ваши дети не плакали, когда была гроза, не так ли?  
— Нет, плакали. Они очень испугались.
121. — Ты ничего не делал весь уик-энд, не так ли?  
— Да, я отдыхал.
122. — Ваш сын пытался найти работу целый месяц, не так ли?  
— Да, но так и не нашел.
123. — После той ссоры Марк и Сюзен довольно быстро помирились, не так ли?  
— Нет, Сюзен так и не смогла его простить.
124. Миссис Дуглас стирала почти все утро.
125. Специалисты искали эффективное средство борьбы с компьютерными вирусами.
126. Белинда забрала ребенка из школы и поехала домой.
127. Они закончили работу поздно вечером.
128. Когда я выглянул из окна, шел сильный снег.
129. Когда Кевин посмотрел на Энни, она улыбнулась.
130. Мне никогда не нравился Лео: он всегда всех высмеивал.
131. Эрик стоял на автобусной остановке. Темнело, и ему хотелось спать. Он ждал человека по имени Кен Уитли. Автобуса не было видно. Неожиданно около Эрика остановилось такси. Из него вышел хорошо одетый господин и направился прямо к Эрику. “Вы Эрик Слейд?” — спросил он.
132. Стюарт был очень общительным человеком, но как потом оказалось, никто не знал, каким он был на самом деле.
133. Пока Альберт служил в армии, его сестра вышла замуж за его школьного товарища.
134. Когда родители подарили Денису мотоцикл, он был счастлив.
135. Поезд шел через туннель, когда неожиданно погас свет.
136. Пока Тим принимал душ, его жена готовила завтрак.
137. Она плакала, когда узнала эти новости?
138. Вы ложились спать, когда взорвалась машина перед вашим домом?
139. — А что делал ваш муж, пока вы убирали квартиру?  
— Просматривал утреннюю почту.
140. — Почему ты так пристально на меня смотришь?  
— Потому что у тебя потрясающее платье. Ты выглядишь великолепно.  
— Спасибо за комплимент. А это платье я купила вчера на распродаже.
141. Тони никогда не нравился джаз. Мне тоже.
142. Когда я был маленьким, то получал много подарков на Рождество. И моя сестра тоже.

143. В прошлый выходной я занимался весь день. Мои друзья тоже.
144. Когда Дина пришла с работы, в комнате был ужасный беспорядок. Рон не готовил школьные уроки. И Дейв тоже. Они дрались.
145. Хотя Эстер и не очень понравился ее новый знакомый, она все же дала ему свой номер телефона.
146. Сильвия считает, что Тед ее не любит. Но он, действительно, ее любит.
147. Я пропускал многие лекции, но я все-таки посещал все семинары.
148. Почему ты не хочешь присоединиться к нам? Ну, давай, пойдем с нами!
149. Майк, ну помоги же мне! Я один не могу решить эту задачу.
150. Вчера они купили очень милую кроватку для своего сынишки.
151. Вчера я очень устал и рано лег спать.
152. Ее отец пробыл в больнице почти месяц.
153. Два года назад в их городе построили большой современный медицинский центр.
154. Энтони закончил школу в прошлом году и поступил в университет.
155. Вчера мать Билли ходила в школу, чтобы поговорить с директором.
156. Это очень маленький городок, но университет — самый большой в стране.
157. Судья не отправил подростка в тюрьму, поскольку ему еще не исполнилось 16 лет.
158. На прошлой неделе в тюрьме был пожар. Пришлось вызвать пожарных.
159. Мать Нэда верующая. Она ходит в церковь каждое воскресенье.
160. Церквушка была старая и необычайно красивая. Все туристы обязательно ее фото граф и ро вал и.
161. — Извини, но я забыл в гостинице фотоаппарат, который взял у тебя.  
— Не может быть!  
— Не волнуйся, я куплю тебе другой.  
— Такой ты уже точно не купишь. Мой отец привез его из Японии. Они у нас не продаются.  
— Понимаю. Мне ужасно стыдно, но...  
— Извиняться поздно. Что я скажу отцу? Он заплатил за него кучу денег!

### UNIT 3

1. Мои родители прожили в Киеве всю свою жизнь.
2. Боже мой! Я забыл ключи от квартиры на работе!
3. Поздравляю! Вы выиграли в лотерее самый крупный приз!

4. — Осторожно! Я только что покрасил дверь.  
— Не волнуйся. Я к ней не прикасался.  
— Правда? А что это у тебя на руке?
5. Это самый непунктуальный человек, которого я когда-либо встречал.
6. Мой приятель заработал достаточно денег, чтобы купить персональный компьютер.
7. Мы не разговариваем друг с другом со времени нашей ссоры.
8. — Как Джим?  
— Не знаю. Я в последнее время ничего о нем не слышал.
9. Уже полдень, а я еще ничего не ел!
10. Мы уже в четвертый раз отправили жалобу, а фирма не отвечает.
11. Еще со школьного возраста ему нравился футбол.
12. Сегодня утром Эмма уже отправила приглашения на новоселье всем своим друзьям.
13. Фред посетил много стран, но еще ни разу не путешествовал автостопом.
14. — Тебе нравится твоя новая работа?  
— Трудно сказать. Я не так уж много здесь отработал.
15. К счастью, этой весной не было наводнения.
16. — Ты когда-нибудь был в Рио-де-Жанейро?  
— Ты шутишь? Я вообще ни разу в жизни не был за границей.
17. — Ты когда-нибудь засыпал на лекции?  
— Да, особенно, когда она начиналась в 9 утра.
18. — От Гарри ушла жена?  
— Да. Но представь себе, он просто счастлив!
19. — Сколько раз Боб проваливался на экзаменах?  
— Очень много раз. Интересно, почему его до сих пор не исключили из института?
20. — А что ты сегодня ел на завтрак?  
— Как всегда: выпил чашку кофе и съел пару бутербродов с сыром.
21. — А сколько Майк потратил денег на этот словарь?  
— И не спрашивай. Но это самый лучший англо-русский словарь, который я когда-либо видел.
22. — Сколько новых английских слов ты выучил в этом семестре?  
— Не знаю, я не считал. Много!
23. — В чем дело? Почему автобус остановился?  
— Произошла авария.  
— Как? Опять?  
— Да, на этой неделе уже было три аварии.  
— Вот именно! А сегодня еще только среда!



24. — Какой фильм они только что посмотрели?  
— Последний фильм Спилберга.
25. — Куда Элис отправилась на этот раз?  
— На Кубу или в Мексику, я точно не знаю.
26. — Чью книгу вы только что купили?  
— Сборник рассказов Рэя Бредбери.
27. — Сколько времени они пробыли в Санкт-Петербурге?  
— 5 лет.
28. — Где полиция нашла угнанную машину?  
— По-моему, где-то за городом.
29. — Кто помог вам переехать на новую квартиру?  
— Мои друзья.
30. — Кому только что звонил Бен?  
— Своему боссу. Сказать, что он заболел и не придет на работу.
31. — Ваш ребенок никогда не боялся темноты, не так ли?  
— Да, он всегда был храбрым!
32. — Ты ведь не отстал от группы, не так ли?  
— Нет, к сожалению, отстал. Так что теперь придется догонять.
33. — Вы ведь всегда интересовались биологией, не так ли?  
— Нет, биология меня никогда не интересовала, хотя у нас в школе был великолепный преподаватель.
34. — Ваш сын недавно сломал руку, не так ли?  
— Да. Бедный мальчик! Она у него очень болит.
35. Я уже несколько раз говорил ему, что ничем, к сожалению, помочь не могу.
36. Хотя наши соседи переехали в другой микрорайон, мы по-прежнему часто видимся.
37. — Ваш муж уже починил свою старую машину?  
— Да, она теперь как новая!
38. Я уже прошел собеседование, но результаты пока неизвестны.
39. Мистеру Бруку 40 лет, а он еще ни разу не был женат.
40. Не волнуйтесь, я больше вас не побеспокою.
41. Лили уже больше не ребенок и должна понимать, что пора отвечать за свои поступки.
42. Дороти уже начала заниматься танцами, но пока еще немногому научилась.
43. Извините, но я не могу больше ждать. Я уйду.
44. Сильвия на диете. Она больше не ест столько сладостей, как раньше.
45. — Где ваша дочь, дома?  
— Нет, она ушла в институт.

46. — Ты идешь в магазин?  
— Нет, я уже там был.
47. Колин с женой уехали в Германию на машине. Они собираются останавливаться в кемпингах.
48. — Вы когда-нибудь были во Франции?  
— Да. И много раз в Париже.
49. С тех пор, как у миссис Стивенсон умер муж, ее жизнь совершенно изменилась.
50. С тех пор, как их брак распался, Марк никогда больше не упоминал имя своей бывшей жены.
51. С тех пор, как мой сосед начал учиться играть на скрипке, я не знаю ни минуты покоя.
52. Они живут здесь с тех пор, как поступили в институт.
53. Я уверен, что Ник еще не вернул деньги, которые он взял взаймы в прошлом месяце.
54. — А вы давно знакомы?  
— Да. Мы познакомились около 10 лет назад, в молодежном лагере.
55. — Слышал новость? Терри женился!  
— Не может быть! Когда же это произошло?  
— На прошлой неделе.
56. Мне очень хотелось бы встретиться со своими одноклассниками. Прошло уже два года, как я их не видел.
57. — У вас когда-нибудь были сильные головные боли?  
— Да, в юности.
58. — Мистер Кинг, вы когда-нибудь увольняли своих служащих?  
— Да, конечно. Кстати, вчера я уволил свою секретаршу.
59. — Я еще не видел нового управляющего.  
— А когда он приступил к работе?  
— Две недели назад.
60. Уверен, что сделал ошибки в контрольной работе. Но я проверил ее уже два раза и ни одной не нашел.
61. — Директор поговорил с родителями Джонни?  
— Да, вчера. Они приходили в школу.
62. — Синди собирается менять мебель в гостиной.  
— Как, опять?! Она ведь сменила обстановку всего лишь месяц назад.  
— Ну и что? Если она может себе это позволить!
63. — Ваш сын получил, наконец, повышение?  
— Нет. Хотя, когда он устраивался на эту работу, ему обещали не только повышение, но и персональную машину.
64. Стенли никогда не был честолюбивым. Он никогда не хотел быть менеджером или директором крупной фирмы. У него никогда не было

желания взобраться на вершину служебной лестницы или обладать властью.

65. У Сюзен всегда было желание сделать что-нибудь стоящее: написать книгу, покорить горную вершину или получить престижную премию. И это не потому, что ей хотелось славы или денег. Просто она хотела знать, что испытывает человек, когда он решил какую-то трудную задачу. Она всегда считала, что успеха заслуживают решительные и энергичные люди.
66. Герберт Фриман стал политиком 15 лет назад. И сейчас он преуспевает. Пять лет назад он купил загородный дом и шикарную машину. Он член парламента на протяжении 15 лет.
67. Все они: Дейв, Колин и Джеральд учились в одной и той же школе. Они закончили школу 20 лет назад, и карьеры у них сложились по-разному.
68. Есть опасность, что уссурийский тигр совсем исчезнет.
69. Любимый цветок моего отца — орхидея.
70. — Собрание было долгим?  
— Да. Оно продолжалось более двух с половиной часов.
71. Половина моих сокурсников не посещают лекции. Интересно, о чем они думают?
72. В наше время компьютер стал частью повседневной жизни.
73. Обезьяна принадлежит к группе животных, которые больше всего напоминают человека.
74. Роза — очень красивый цветок с изумительным запахом.
75. Вчера, когда Мэгги ходила в овощной магазин, она купила полтора килограмма картошки и полкило моркови.
76. — Почему этот человек всем недоволен?  
— Он едет первым классом. А пассажир первого класса вправе рассчитывать на определенный комфорт.
77. — Кто приготовил и продал первый гамбургер?  
— Насколько я знаю, американский шеф-повар из Коннектикута, Луис Лассен. Это было в 1895 году.

## UNIT 4

1. Мой друг живет в Канаде почти пять лет. Он уже бегло говорит по-английски.
2. Дождь идет с самого утра. Я думаю, он никогда не прекратится!
3. Том занимается карате много лет. У него черный пояс.
4. — Джим, посмотри на себя в зеркало! Ты весь в краске! — А что в этом удивительного? Я же целый день красил дачу.

5. Это ненадежная фирма. Они занимаются продажей компьютеров не так уж давно.
6. Последнее время у меня много работы. Так что я, наконец-то, могу отоспаться.
7. — Ты что, пишешь поздравительные открытки с утра? — Да, ведь у меня полно друзей и родственников.
8. — Вы занимаетесь коллекционированием календариков давно? — Нет. Я начал в прошлом году, но сейчас в моей коллекции около 100 штук!
9. — Она играет в шахматы с детства? — Да, с семи лет.
10. — Эта актриса давно уже снимается в кино? — Нет, это ее первый фильм.
11. — Что вы здесь делаете? — Жду свою приятельницу, вот уже почти час.
12. — Ты где играл в футбол? На школьном стадионе? — Нет, во дворе.
13. — Почему дедушка смотрит новости, а не чемпионат мира по хоккею? — Не знаю. Спроси у него.
14. — Сколько времени вы здесь тренируетесь? — Почти год.
15. Зачем он все время пытается доказать нам, что он великий спортсмен? Все знают, что он — неудачник.
16. — Какой матч они смотрят? — “Спартак” — “Динамо”.
17. — Какую книгу ты ищешь? — Пособие по бодибилдингу.
18. — Чьи семинары ты посещал в этом семестре? — Профессора Робинса.
19. — За какую команду Ник болеет всю жизнь? — За “Спартак”. Он считает, что благодаря “Спартаку” мир знает, что футбол в России не умер.
20. — О чем они болтают всю лекцию? — Понятия не имею.
21. — На кого этот парень смотрит целый вечер? — На Синди, конечно. Она здесь самая красивая.
22. — Чем занимается Ваш сын в последнее время? — Ищет работу в каком-нибудь спортивном клубе. Он ведь тренер по боксу.
23. — Кто это звонил Рэт всю последнюю неделю? — Ее бывший муж. Уговаривает ее забыть все обиды и вернуться к нему.
24. — О ком вы все время думаете? — О герое моей новой книги, великолепном спортсмене.
25. — Томми, какие песни ты уже целый час слушаешь? — А что, они тебе не нравятся?
26. — Робин даже и не пытается бросить курить, не так ли? — Нет, почему? Он пробовал много раз, но пока безрезультатно.

27. — Аня, ты ведь весь день ничего не делаешь, не так ли? — Да. Я имею право расслабиться?
28. — Трейси занимается плаванием уже не первый год, не так ли? — Да, она в первый раз пошла в бассейн, когда ей исполнилось восемь лет.
29. — Нет, ты только посмотри! Ни одного гола. Они ведь уже давно играют, не так ли? — Да, нет же! Всего 15 минут. Успокойся! Наши все равно выиграют.
30. Дэвид проработал в этом банке уже пять лет. Он работает здесь с тех пор, как его семья переехала в Вашингтон.
31. Брайан Стивене тренирует борцов по дзю-до десять лет. Пятеро из его учеников уже стали чемпионами мира.
32. Даниель никогда раньше не строил ничего сам. Неудивительно, что свой новый загородный дом он строит третий год.
33. Боже мой! Я перевожу этот текст почти два часа. И еще не закончил.
34. Эндрю играет в этой хоккейной команде уже месяц, но еще не забил ни одной шайбы.
35. Маленький Джимми копит деньги на новый велосипед второй год. Пока что он собрал только половину требуемой суммы.
36. Крис и Джой живут в плавучем доме, который они купили в прошлом году.
37. Норман Хелм, которому сейчас около сорока, принимает участие в автогонках с двадцати пяти лет.
38. Вы слышали о драке между болельщиками, которая произошла на стадионе Уэмбли?
39. С помощью Интерпола они, наконец, поймали террориста, который два года назад взорвал пассажирский поезд.
40. Гимназистка, которая только что выступила, самая юная участница соревнований.
41. Человек, которого Джек, действительно, уважает, это его тренер по фигурному катанию.
42. Дюк Эллингтон — это человек, чье имя знакомо всем любителям джаза.
43. — Ты помнишь все турниры, в которых принимал участие? — Нет, только те, где я не занял призового места.
44. — Где все эти спортсмены, которые были кумирами нашего детства? — Боюсь, многих из них уже нет в живых.
45. — Кто вел машину, которая только-что перевернулась? — Не знаю. Надеюсь, что гонщик не пострадал.
46. Чемпион, у которого журналисты пытались взять интервью, весьма не приветлив.

47. Боб занимается спортом, о котором я много слышал — дельтапланеризм.
48. Сесилия Брет, с которой мы вместе учились в колледже, сейчас владелица небольшого магазина спортивной одежды.
49. Спортивная школа, где работал мистер Уиндон, была самой престижной в городе.
50. Есть ли какая-нибудь веская причина, по которой Рональд Миллер решил бросить спорт?
51. Совет директоров фирмы, куда Марк хотел устроиться, отклонил его заявление.
52. Эта история произошла несколько лет назад, когда известную спортсменку дисквалифицировали за употребление наркотиков.
53. Молодой человек, у которого я купил этот потрясающий свитер, привез его из Швейцарии, куда он ездил на соревнования по горнолыжному спорту.
54. Артистический пул, в котором второе место занял российский игрок, проходил под патронажем Тома Россмана, которого во всем мире зовут Доктор Кью.
55. Девушка, с которой помолвлен Клайд, многообещающая теннисистка.

## UNIT 5

1. Когда он вернулся домой, дети уже легли спать.
2. Когда я пришел в театр, представление уже закончилось.
3. Как только Энн узнала о смерти бабушки, она прервала поездку и вернулась в Брайтон.
4. После того как Кейт закончила уборку квартиры, она решила немного отдохнуть.
5. Им очень понравилось путешествовать автостопом. Они никогда этого раньше не делали.
6. К тому времени, когда Лили Эндрюс исполнилось 25 лет, она была уже известной певицей.
7. Когда Патрик зашел к родителям, они только что поужинали.
8. Кэрол отказалась играть в пьесе, пока не получит главную роль.
9. У нас отключили телефон, потому что мы не оплатили счет.
10. Воры легко проникли в дом, потому что хозяева забыли закрыть окно.
11. Это была молодая актриса, которую он никогда раньше не видел.
12. Эдвин очень расстроился, потому что потерял свое водительское удостоверение.
13. — Вы посоветовались с врачом, прежде чем принимать это лекарство?  
— Нет. И очень об этом жалею.

14. — Ваша дочь жила с вами пока не вышла замуж? -Да.
15. — Когда вы пришли, фильм уже начался?  
— Да, к сожалению. Мы пропустили начало.
16. — Ты перезвонил Мартину как только прослушал сообщение на автоответчике?  
— Нет, попозже. Я тогда был очень занят.
17. — Прошло пять или десять лет прежде чем они разошлись?  
— Пять.
18. — Она играла в театре пока не ушла на пенсию или раньше?  
— Гораздо раньше.
19. — Сколько лет он играл в команде прежде чем перешел в “Манчестер Юнайтед”?  
— Около шести лет.
20. — Сколько денег она заработала к тому времени?  
— Достаточно, чтобы купить виллу и яхту.
21. — Чем он занимался прежде чем стал известным музыкантом?  
— Играл в ресторанах.
22. — Почему она лгала Вам до того, как вы сами не узнали всю правду?  
— Не знаю. Наверное, боялась, что я ее брошу.
23. — Сколько времени Рик пробыл в больнице, когда вы узнали, что он болен?  
— Почти две недели.
24. —Какую программу она вела до того как создала свою собственную?  
— Точно не знаю. По-моему, ток шоу.
25. — Где он работал перед тем, как стать президентом компании?  
— В той же компании, начальником отдела.
26. — Когда их брак распался?  
— До того как родился второй ребенок.
27. — Какие фильмы он снимал до того как выпустил свой первый полнометражный фильм?  
— Рекламные ролики.
28. — Чьи пьесы вы никогда раньше не видели?  
— Пристли.
29. — Куда они переехали после того, как у них сгорел дом?  
— К своим детям.
30. — С кем она встречалась до того как познакомилась с Роджером?  
— С одним из своих одноклассников.
31. — Кто уже сообщил вам эту новость к тому времени, когда я вернулся?  
— Соседи.
32. — Что случилось до того, как прибыла полиция?  
— Преступники ограбили банк и скрылись.

33. — Кем хотел стать ваш сын до того как поступил в колледж?  
— Чемпионом мира по бодибилдингу.
34. — К 1990 году она уже сыграла в 10 фильмах, не так ли? -Да.
35. — Свет уже погас, когда вы вошли в зал, не так ли?  
— Нет.
36. — Вы ведь никогда раньше не брали интервью у кинозвезды, правда?  
— Нет, ни разу. Я очень волнуюсь.
37. — Дождь так и не прекратился, когда вы вышли из театра, не так ли?  
— Нет, прекратился. Мы даже решили немного пройтись.
38. К тому времени когда скорая помощь доставила пострадавших в больницу, один из них скончался.
39. За ужином в вагоне-ресторане он пытался объяснить Лили, почему десять лет назад он так неожиданно исчез из ее жизни.
40. Они шли уже больше двух часов, когда неожиданно увидели развалины старого замка.
41. Друзья бились над проектом почти месяц, пока, наконец, не нашли оригинальное решение.
42. Вечером у Боба разболелась голова, потому что он целый день работал.
43. На этот раз он ждал недолго. Мейбл пришла вовремя.
44. После их последней ссоры Грэг и Колин не разговаривали больше года.
45. — Вы жили в Нью-Йорке уже пять лет, перед тем как решили переехать в Лос- Анджелес?  
— Нет, только два.
46. — Она долго лежала на солнце?  
— Да, около трех часов.
47. — Прежде чем Чарльз бросил курить, он курил лет десять или больше?  
— Около 20 лет.
48. — Прежде чем вы дозвонились до справочной, вы звонили час или меньше?  
— Полчаса.
49. — Как долго вы осматривали выставку, когда, наконец, решили перекусить?  
— Около трех часов.
50. — Чем занимались дети, когда отец вернулся с работы?  
— Играли в Скрэббл.
51. — Почему они жили в таком дешевом отеле?  
— Потому что у них было мало денег. Вот почему.
52. — Что ты смотрел, когда я тебе позвонил? —Триллер.
53. — Где она бродила целый день?  
— Она гуляла по городу.



54. — Как вы пытались связаться с ними?  
— По сотовому телефону.
55. — На чьей машине он ехал, когда произошла авария?  
— На машине своей фирмы.
56. — Куда вы направлялись, когда я вас встретил?  
— В кино, на премьеру нового фильма.
57. — Когда ты готовила целый день?  
— В прошлое воскресенье.
58. — Сколько денег он зарабатывал, когда его сестра начала сниматься в рекламных роликах?  
— Достаточно, чтобы прокормить семью.
59. — Какой журнал она читала, когда зашел Денни?  
— “Ньюсвик”.
60. — Как быстро они шли?  
— Два километра в час.
61. — Какой фильм смотрел Бобби, когда в комнату вошла его мать?  
— Боевик.
62. — Кому это ты вчера названивал целый день?  
— Своему приятелю.
63. — Кто всю прошлую неделю пользовался моим компьютером?  
— Ну, я. А что, что-нибудь не так?
64. — Что ты искал, когда я вчера натолкнулся на тебя в супермаркете?  
— Подарок теще ко дню рождения.
65. — Что всю прошлую ночь происходило у наших соседей?  
— Очередная вечеринка, наверное.
66. Когда я, наконец, добрался до работы, я вдруг вспомнил, что забыл запереть входную дверь.
67. Последние пятнадцать минут Алекс решал кроссворд. Неудивительно, что когда учитель задал ему вопрос, он не смог на него ответить.
68. Вчера, когда Миссис Добсон ходила в больницу навещать отца, врач сказал, чтобы она не беспокоилась.
69. Пэт рассказала трогательную историю о своем детстве. Но я не верил ни одному ее слову. Она редко говорила правду.
70. Полицейские попросили у свидетеля его домашний адрес и номер телефона.
71. Можно попросить тебя об одолжении? Ты не подвезешь меня завтра утром в аэропорт?
72. Знаешь, Роберт, я вчера встретила на улице Пэгги. Она спрашивала о тебе.
73. Извини, я не расслышала. Что ты сказал, Ник?

74. — Сколько стоит эта кассета?  
— Откуда я знаю? Пойди и спроси о цене.
74. “Не плачь!” — сказала она сыну, когда его избили подростки. — “Ты что, не можешь за себя постоять?”
75. Они говорят, что билетов на сегодняшний концерт джаз-оркестра Линкольн-центра нет.
76. Я знаю, что Брайан, как всегда, скажет, что у него нет денег.
77. Нелли уже пообещала нам, что приедет на следующий год.
78. Он говорит, что уже видел этот мюзикл.
79. Джек говорит, что видел этот фильм на кинофестивале два года назад.
80. Лора сказала мне, что терпеть не может мыльные оперы.
81. Мальчик сказал, что его собаку зовут Чарли.
82. Кто-то сказал однажды, что актер — это не просто профессия, это способ жизни и мышления.
83. Дэн сказал мне, что ждет звонка от своей невесты.
84. Бен сказал матери, что он еще не сделал уроки.
85. Мои друзья сказали, что стояли в очереди за билетами на матч целый день.
86. Они сказали, что сегодня вечером едут на вокзал встречать внуку.
87. Сэм сказал отцу, что через два дня уезжает на соревнования по плаванию.
88. Анжела сказала мне, что завтра она идет в Большой театр на “Лебединое озеро”.
89. Ирвин спросил меня, видел ли я Энни на вечеринке.
90. В турагентстве у меня спросили, могу ли я принести необходимые документы через неделю.
91. Хозяйка спросила меня, нравится ли мне моя комната.
92. Стенли хотел знать, готовился ли его сын к экзамену, когда он позвонил домой, или смотрел спортивные новости.
93. Управляющий поинтересовался, будут ли все служащие на работе в субботу.
94. Крис хотел знать, долго ли Эдгард изучает японский язык.
95. Эллен поинтересовалась, купил ли муж билеты в партер или в ложу.
96. Мистер Дуглас, к сожалению, не знал, чем занимаются его ученики после школы.
97. Мне хотелось знать, когда закончится спектакль.
98. Мои родители спросили, почему я все выходные просидел перед телевизором.
99. Я поинтересовался, какие актеры получили премию за лучшую роль.
100. Нам было интересно, кто получит “Тэффи”.

101. Родители поинтересовались, куда я иду и в какое время буду дома.
102. Дик спросил друзей, кого они встретили на конференции.
103. Все хотели знать, чей сценарий выбрал режиссер.
104. На днях Дейзи ходила к гадалке. Ей хотелось узнать, какие события произойдут в ее жизни в ближайшем будущем.
105. Лесли вернулась домой после полуночи. Ее мать поинтересовалась, где же она была.
106. Полиция хотела выяснить, что послужило причиной пожара.
107. Тренер велел своему ученику не сдаваться и бороться до победного конца.
108. Муж Денни неоднократно просил ее не тратить столько денег на наряды.
109. Домовладелец попросил меня внести плату за квартиру за месяц вперед.
110. Офицер приказал солдатам открыть огонь.
111. Хозяйка спросила меня, не хочу ли я попробовать ее новое блюдо.
112. Карен хотела знать, отправлять ли ей факс немедленно.
113. Певица спросила зрителей, не хотят ли они послушать песни ее старого репертуара.
114. Жена Филя хотела знать, не подвезти ли его на работу.
115. Компания попросила полицию расследовать дело о внезапной смерти их президента.
116. Родители Линды просили ее расторгнуть помолвку с Энтони.

## APPENDIX

### Spelling of ending -ed. (the Past Simple Tense: Participle II)

- a) If a verb ends in **-e**, we add only **-d**:  
*love—loved*
- b) If a verb ends in **-y**, we change **-y** to **-ied**.  
*try—tried*
- c) If a one-syllable word ends in one vowel + one consonant, we double the final consonant before **-ed**  
*travel—travelled*  
*stop—stopped*
- d) If a word of two or more syllables ends in one vowel + one consonant, we double the final consonant only if the final consonant is stressed  
*ad'mit—admitted*  
But: *cosset—cosseted*

### II. Spelling of ending -ing. (Participle I)

- a) If a word ends in one **-e**, we normally drop the **-e** before **-ing**  
*live—living*  
Exception *be—being*
- b) If a word ends in **-ee**, we do not drop **-e** before **-ing**  
*see—seeing*
- c) We do not change **-y** to **-i** before **-ing**  
*carry—carrying*
- d) If a word ends in **-ie**, we change the **-ie** to **-y** before **-ing**  
*die—dying*
- e) If a one-syllable word ends in one vowel + one consonant, we double the final consonant before **-ing**  
*set—setting*

If a word of two or more syllables ends in one vowel + one consonant, we double the final consonant only if the final syllable is stressed

*for 'get—forgetting*

But: *cover—covering*

- f) We do not double **-y**, **-w**, or **-x** at the end of words  
*play—playing*

## LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS (in alphabetical order)

Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle	Infinitive	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was, were	been	light	lit	lit
beat	beat	beaten	lose	lost	lost
become	became	become	make	made	made
begin	began	begun	mean	meant	meant
bend	bent	bent	meet	met	met
bet	bet	bet	put	put	put
bite	bit	bitten	read	read	read
blow	blew	blown	ride	rode	ridden
break	broke	broken	ring	rang	rung
bring	brought	brought	rise	rose	risen
build	built	built	run	ran	run
burst	burst	burst	say	said	said
buy	bought	bought	see	saw	seen
catch	caught	caught	seek	sought	sought
choose	chose	chosen	sell	sold	sold
come	came	come	send	sent	sent
cost	cost	cost	set	set	set
creep	crept	crept	shake	shook	shaken
cut	cut	cut	shine	shone	shone
deal	dealt	dealt	shoot	shot	shot
dig	dug	dug	show	showed	shown
do	did	done	shrink	shrank	shrunk
draw	drew	drawn	shut	shut	shut
drink	drank	drunk	sing	sang	sung
drive	drove	driven	sink	sank	sunk
eat	ate	eaten	sit	sat	sat
fall	fell	fallen	sleep	slept	slept
feed	fed	fed	speak	spoke	spoken
feel	felt	felt	spend	spent	spent

fight	fought	fought	spill	spilt	spilt
find	found	found	split	split	split
fly	flew	flown	spread	spread	spread
forbid	forbade	forbidden	spring	sprang	sprung
forget	forgot	forgotten	stand	stood	stood
forgive	forgave	forgiven	steal	stole	stolen
freeze	froze	frozen	stick	stuck	stuck
get	got	got	sting	stung	stung
give	gave	given	stink	stank	stunk
go	went	gone	strike	struck	struck
grow	grew	grown	swear	swore	sworn
hang	hung	hung	sweep	swept	swept
have	had	had	swim	swam	swum
hear	heard	heard	swing	swung	swung
hide	hid	hidden	take	took	taken
hit	hit	hit	teach	taught	taught
hold	held	held	tear	tore	torn
hurt	hurt	hurt	tell	told	told
keep	kept	kept	think	thought	thought
know	knew	known	throw	threw	thrown
lay	laid	laid	understand	understood	understood
lead	led	led	wake	woke	woken
learn	learnt	learnt	wear	wore	worn
leave	left	left	win	won	won
lend	lent	lent	write	wrote	written
let	let	let			
lie	lay	lain			

## CONTENTS

<b>UNIT 1: FUTURE PLANS.....</b>	<b>3</b>
Future simple .....	3
Positive form .....	4
Negative form .....	5
General questions .....	8
Alternative questions .....	10
Special questions .....	11
Tag questions .....	13
‘There is/are’ in future simple .....	14
Future continuous .....	15
Positive form .....	16
Negative form .....	17
General questions .....	19
Alternative questions .....	19
Special questions .....	20
Tag questions .....	21
Future simple vs future continuous .....	22
Future perfect .....	23
Positive /form .....	23
Negative form .....	24
General questions .....	24
Alternative questions .....	25
Special questions .....	26
Object questions .....	26
Subject questions .....	26
Tag question .....	26
Future perfect continuous .....	27
Ways of expressing future .....	29
Article .....	33
Both, either, neither .....	36
Both ... And... / either ... Or ... / neither ... Nor .....	38
Clauses of time and condition .....	41
Clause of time .....	41
Clause of condition .....	44
Grammar in context .....	49
 <b>UNIT 2: REMEMBERING THE PAST .....</b>	 <b>53</b>
Past simple .....	53
Positive form – regular verbs .....	54

Positive form – irregular verbs . . . . .	56
Negative form . . . . .	59
Regular and irregular verbs which are easily confused . . . . .	62
General questions . . . . .	63
Alternative questions . . . . .	66
Special questions . . . . .	67
Object questions . . . . .	68
Subject questions . . . . .	68
Tag questions . . . . .	70
Used to/would . . . . .	72
Past continuous . . . . .	78
Positive form . . . . .	78
Negative form . . . . .	80
General questions . . . . .	81
Alternative questions . . . . .	82
Special questions . . . . .	82
Object questions . . . . .	83
Subject questions . . . . .	83
Tag questions . . . . .	84
Past continuous vs past simple . . . . .	85
Present simple/present continuous/past simple/past continuous . . . . .	90
Articles . . . . .	91
Grammar in context . . . . .	93
Test yourself (unit 2) . . . . .	95
<b>UNIT 3: PATH TO SUCCESS . . . . .</b>	<b>98</b>
Present perfect simple . . . . .	98
Positive form . . . . .	99
Negative form . . . . .	102
General questions . . . . .	102
Alternative questions . . . . .	104
Special questions . . . . .	105
Object questions . . . . .	105
Subject questions . . . . .	105
Tag questions . . . . .	107
Just / already / yet / still . . . . .	108
Not ... Any more / not ... Any longer / no longer . . . . .	111
Since / for . . . . .	112
Present perfect simple vs past simple . . . . .	114
Articles . . . . .	121



Grammar in context . . . . .	123
Role cards: . . . . .	126
Test yourself (unit 3) . . . . .	128
<b>UNIT 4: THE WORLD OF SPORT . . . . .</b>	<b>130</b>
Present perfect continuous . . . . .	130
Positive form . . . . .	131
Negative form . . . . .	132
General questions . . . . .	133
Alternative questions . . . . .	134
Special questions . . . . .	135
Object questions . . . . .	135
Subject questions . . . . .	136
Tag questions . . . . .	138
Present perfect continuous vs present perfect simple . . . . .	139
Relative clauses (defining/non-defining) . . . . .	144
Who, which, that as subjects of a defining relative clause . . . . .	145
Who(m)*, which, that as objects of a defining relative clause . . . . .	147
Which and who(m) + prepositions . . . . .	149
Whose / where /when / whyin defining and non-defining relative clauses .	151
Articles (review) . . . . .	153
Grammar in context . . . . .	153
Test yourself (unit 4) . . . . .	155
<b>UNIT 5: QUALITY TIME . . . . .</b>	<b>158</b>
Past perfect simple . . . . .	158
Positive form . . . . .	159
Negative form . . . . .	160
General questions . . . . .	161
Alternative questions . . . . .	162
Special questions . . . . .	163
Object questions . . . . .	163
Subject questions . . . . .	163
Tag questions . . . . .	164
Past perfect continuous . . . . .	166
Positive form . . . . .	167
Negative form . . . . .	168
General questions . . . . .	168
Alternative questions . . . . .	169
Special questions . . . . .	170

Object questions . . . . .	170
Subject questions . . . . .	170
Tag questions . . . . .	171
Past perfect simple vs past perfect continuous . . . . .	172
Narrative tenses . . . . .	174
Reported speech. . . . .	176
Reporting verbs . . . . .	177
Indirect speech. . . . .	178
Reported statements: without tense changes . . . . .	178
Reported statements: with tense changes . . . . .	179
Reported statements: other changes . . . . .	181
Reported questions: general and alternative questions . . . . .	182
Reported questions: special questions . . . . .	184
Reported questions: tag questions . . . . .	186
Reported commands . . . . .	187
Reported offers . . . . .	188
Reported requests . . . . .	189
Review of reported speech . . . . .	190
Reported conversations . . . . .	191
Grammar in context. . . . .	194
Test yourself (unit 5) . . . . .	198
<b>SUPPLEMENTARY . . . . .</b>	<b>200</b>
Unit 1 . . . . .	200
Unit 2 . . . . .	206
Unit 3 . . . . .	214
Unit 4 . . . . .	218
Unit 5 . . . . .	221
<b>APPENDIX . . . . .</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS . . . . .</b>	<b>228</b>

*Учебное издание*

Базанова Елена Михайловна

# ПРАКТИКУМ ПО ГРАММАТИКЕ АНГЛИЙСКОГО ЯЗЫКА

Учебное пособие

Редактор и корректор *Е. Б. Михайлова*  
Компьютерная верстка *А. Ю. Матвеев*

Подписано в печать 28.10.2017. Формат 84x108 1/32  
Бумага офсетная. Гарнитура Times  
Усл. печ. л. 18,9. Тираж 500 экз. Заказ 337.

Издательство Уральского университета  
620000, Екатеринбург-83, ул. Тургенева, 4

Отпечатано в Издательско-полиграфическом центре УрФУ  
620000, Екатеринбург-83, ул. Тургенева, 4  
Тел.: +7 (343) 350-56-64, 358-93-22  
Факс: +7 (343) 358-93-06  
E-mail: [press-urfu@mail.ru](mailto:press-urfu@mail.ru)  
<http://print.urfu.ru>

